

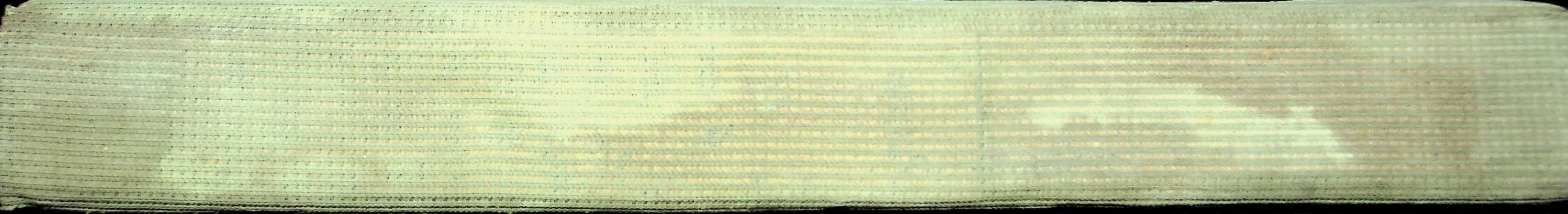
5  
apsar

DEL  
Prac  
NOTE

NAME \_\_\_\_\_

PAGES











Für mich, Puschkar 15.5.89

Kuṇḍalinī  
Yogā for the West

1. Team  
2. Gellipharman/Onis  
3. Fast  
4. Brown in India





Sarasvatī  
Goddess of Wisdom, Music, Beauty  
(author's collection)



Swami Sivananda Radha

# KUNDALINI

Yoga for the West

*With a Foreword by*  
Herbert V. Guenther

*And an Introduction by*  
Stanley Krippner



1985  
SHAMBHALA  
Boston & London



SHAMBHALA PUBLICATIONS, INC.

Horticultural Hall

300 Massachusetts Avenue

Boston, Massachusetts 02115

© 1978 by Swami Sivananda Radha

All rights reserved

Distributed in the United States by Random House

and in Canada by Random House of Canada Ltd.

*Library of Congress Cataloging in Publication Data*

Sivananda Radha, Swami, 1911-

Kundalini, yoga for the West.

Reprint. Originally published: Spokane, WA:

Timeless Books, 1978.

Bibliography: p.

Includes index.

1. Kundalini. I. Title.

BL1215.K8S58 1981 181'.45 81-40488

ISBN 0-394-74884-0 (pbk.) AACR2

*Printed in the United States of America*

*A complete set of 18 full-color plates of the cakra symbols from Kundalini Yoga for the West is available from Timeless Books, Box 160, Porthill, Idaho 83853.*



***Dedicated . . .***

*To all Gurus who have prepared the Path,  
especially to Swami Sivananda Sarasvati of Rishikesh, India,  
whose inspiration resulted in the birth of my spiritual life,  
and to my Tibetan Guru  
who taught me "the laying of the foundation."*







## Acknowledgments

---

THIS BOOK came into being as a result of the combined efforts of a team organized by what I call "my Divine Committee." Each of these persons (and others whom space does not permit me to name) made a unique contribution, without which the final result could not have been achieved.

My special thanks go to the following: Mary Armstrong, who was the first to express enthusiasm at the idea of bringing out the Teachings in book form. She made suggestions and introduced me to professionals in the field of writing and editing. Linda Brown, whose beautiful colored illustrations of the Cakras and line drawings help the reader's understanding of Eastern symbols. Ann Conway, for her esthetic line drawings, which make subtle aspects of the Kuṇḍalinī exercises clearer. Phyllis Dale, who assumed the responsibility for making an index and organizing the notes. Diane Osoko, Anna Marie McGuire, and Terence Buie for proofreading and checking the manuscript. Rita Foran, who transcribed the outpouring ideas of the first draft, and worked tirelessly with great sensitivity through each stage of the production of the manuscript to its final preparation for the publisher. Richard Reeves, for his dedicated spirit and artistic taste in designing the book. Teri Gray, whose skill in editing helped to clarify complex Eastern ideas for the Western reader. Dr. Robert Frager of the California Institute of Transpersonal Psychology, who gave me an opportunity to teach some of this material to his students, thereby widening the scope for Kuṇḍalinī Yoga.

Special mention must be made of the members of Yasodhara Ashram Society, through whom many of the exercises crystallized into courses, to give evidence of the validity of the ancient Teachings for our modern times in the West.









# Table of Contents

---

Acknowledgments	vii
List of Illustrations	xiv
Foreword	xvii
Introduction	xxi

A Word from the Author	3
------------------------	---

Chapter One: THE ASPIRANT	7
---------------------------	---

Chapter Two: MYSTICAL ASPECTS OF HAṬHA YOGA	15
--	----

Chapter Three: DIVINE MOTHER ŚAKTI (THE DEVĪ)	
---	--

Śakti-Yoga Philosophy: Quotes from the late Swami Sivananda Sarasvati of Rishikesh, India.	25
Woman, the Handmaiden of Divine Mother	31

Chapter Four: MŪLĀDHĀRA: THE FIRST CAKRA	
--	--

The First Cakra and its Symbols	35
The Goddess of Speech—Śakti	43
Speech: Exercises	47
Thoughts on Smell	49
Smell: Exercises	50
Thoughts on Sex	52
Making a List: An Illustration	56
Sex: Making a list	58
Thoughts on Death	60
Death and Deadly Games: Making a list	61
Competition: Making a list	65
Mechanicalness: Making a list	66
Love: Making a list	67



Consciousness—Mind: Making a list	68
Divine Light Invocation	70
Perception and Use of Neutral Energy	75
Dance is Yoga . . . Yoga is Dance	76

## Chapter Five: SVĀDHIṢṬHĀNA: THE SECOND CAKRA

The Second Cakra and its Symbols	81
The Goddess of Speech—Śakti	86
Speech: Exercises	88
Thoughts on Taste	91
Taste: Exercises	93
Thoughts on Imagination and Desires	97
Imagination: Making a list	99
Desires: Making a list	101
Imagination—Visualization: Exercises	102
Thoughts on Self-Image and Personality Aspects	106
Self-Image: Making a list	108
Personality Aspects: Making a list	109
Watching the Mind	110
Watching the Mind: Exercises (Steps to Meditation)	111
Reflection on Water	115

## Chapter Six: MANIPŪRA: THE THIRD CAKRA

The Third Cakra and its Symbols	121
The Goddess of Speech—Śakti	124
Speech: Exercises	125
Thoughts on Sight	129
Sight: Exercises	132
Thoughts on Imagination, Mind, and Energy	136
Imagination, Mind, and Energy: Making a list	138
Thoughts on Emotions, Mind, and Energy	142
Emotions, Mind, and Energy: Making a list	144
Thoughts on Dreams	148
Thoughts on Worship	149
Additional Thoughts on Sex	151



Thoughts on Kuṇḍalinī, God, Energy	152
Reflection on the Body as a Garden	157

## Chapter Seven: ANĀHATA: THE FOURTH CAKRA

The Fourth Cakra and its Symbols	163
The Goddess of Speech—Śakti	166
Thoughts on Touch	168
Touch: Exercises	169
Powers of the Mind	173
Mind: Doubt	177
Mind: Observation	178
Mind: Energy Manifest	182
Mind and Healing	186
Thoughts on Humility and Gratitude	191
Additional Thoughts on Sex	193
Thoughts on Brahmacharya (Celibacy)	195
Thoughts on Worship	199
Synthesis of Exercises for the Anāhata Cakra	203
Prāṇāyāma	211
Prāṇāyāma: Preparatory Exercises	214
Prāṇāyāma: Finger Exercises	215
Bhastrikā-Prāṇāyāma: Bellows Breath	216
Alternate Nostril Prāṇāyāma	216
Kuṇḍalinī Prāṇāyāma	218
Prāṇic Healing	218
The Mantra So'ham Haṃsa	219
Thoughts on Reverence for Life	220
Reflection on Māyā (Illusion)	223

## Chapter Eight: VIŚUDDHA: THE FIFTH CAKRA

The Fifth Cakra and its Symbols	227
The Goddess of Speech—Śakti	230
Thoughts on Hearing	234
Hearing: Exercises	238
Synthesis of the Viśuddha Cakra	246
Thoughts on Ego and Responsibility	257



Thoughts on Kuṇḍalinī	258
Meditation on the Light	263

## Chapter Nine: ĀJÑĀ: THE SIXTH CAKRA

The Sixth Cakra and its Symbols	267
Ājñā Cakra	270
Concentration Exercise	272
Synthesis of Ājñā Cakra	273
Exercises for the Ājñā Cakra	284
The Mind	287
Powers of the Mind	293

## Chapter Ten: POWERS OF THE CAKRAS

Powers of the Cakras: Their Attainment is Mankind's Potential	301
Powers of Mūlādhāra Cakra	302
Mantra for the Mūlādhāra Cakra	304
Powers of Svādhiṣṭhāna Cakra	305
Mantra for the Svādhiṣṭhāna Cakra	306
Powers of Maṇipūra Cakra	307
Mantra for the Maṇipūra Cakra	308
Powers of Anāhata Cakra	309
Mantra for the Anāhata Cakra	311
Powers of Viśuddha Cakra	312
Mantra for the Viśuddha Cakra	314
Powers of Ājñā Cakra	315
Mantra for the Ājñā Cakra	316
Powers of the Cakras	317

## Chapter Eleven: BRAINSTORMING: MIND, CONSCIOUS- NESS, ENERGY 321



## APPENDIX:

### Notes:

- 1) Different Paths for the Aspirant 331
- 2) The Power of Speech 331
- 3) Mantra 332
- 4) A Further Note on Sex and Celibacy 333
- 5) Mind and Consciousness 333
- 6) Worship 333
- 7) Secret Powers of the Mind 334
- 8) Misunderstandings about Kuṇḍalinī and Sex 335
- 9) Symptoms of Kuṇḍalinī 337
- 10) The Potential of Mind 338
- 11) The Gods on Earth 339
- 12) The Descent of the Soul 340

Recommended Books 341

About the Author 347

Index 349

# List of Illustrations

Sarasvatī: Goddess of Wisdom, Music, Beauty	ii
The Seven Cakras: levels of consciousness— view from the front	2
Swami Sivananda Radha and Swami Sivananda Sarasvati <i>The Aspirant</i>	8
<i>"The feet are now rooted in the Divine inspiration of heaven"</i>	16
Swami Sivananada Sarasvati	24
Śākta (Śiva): Male Principle of Cosmic Energy	27
Śakti (the Devī): Female Principle of Cosmic Energy	29
Mūlādhāra Cakra	34
The Goddess of Speech—Śakti	44
Practice of the Divine Light Invocation illustrated	73
<i>"In the rhythm of the dance each Gopi discovers Lord Kṛṣṇa for herself"</i>	77
Svādhiṣṭhāna Cakra	80
Reflection on Water	114
Maṇipūra Cakra	120
Reflection on the Body as a Garden	156
Anāhata Cakra	162
Swami Sivananda Radha and Swami Sivananda Sarasvati <i>A sense of gratitude</i>	205
Prāṇāyāma finger exercises: 4-16-8	215
Reflection on Māyā (Illusion)	222
Viśuddha Cakra	226
Meditation on The Light	262
Ājñā Cakra	266
The Seven Cakras: levels of consciousness— view of the spine	274
Śākta (Śiva)/Śakti: in Divine union	280



*"The power that created the mind is beyond mind"* 300

*"The drop has returned to the ocean"* 320

*"The desire to grow is like a beautiful flower"* 327

Swami Sivananda Radha 346







## Foreword

---

IN VIEW OF the growing interest in the "inner way" by which we attempt to tune in to the forces of evolution, and considering the spate of publications in this field, *Kundalinī: Yoga for the West* may well mark a break-through, long expected and long overdue. The reasons for such a statement will become obvious when we reflect on what has happened to a momentous discovery by and in Indian thinking and on how much is still needed to rid ourselves of the trash that has been allowed to accumulate.

It seems that throughout the universe which by definition includes everything and hence makes the assumption of or belief in something beyond or outside it quite illogical, two apparently opposed tendencies are and have been at work. The one which has until recently attracted quite a disproportionate attention is in the direction of an equilibrium state of universal disorder or, as one says in physics, maximum entropy, which, given a social or, if this seems too crude or vulgar an assessment, a "spiritual" twist, is a pressure-free endstate in which action is neither possible nor necessary and which is therefore highly cherished by utopists of any brand and their followers. This tendency, however, holds good only for "closed systems"—closed to the influx of energy and information—such as the conversion efficiency of power plants, the equalization of temperature between hot and cold water in the same recipient. Nevertheless, this tendency has been so fascinating that it led to the premature conclusion that the universe itself was a closed system.

Only recently has the exclusive validity of this tendency been doubted and attention has been directed toward the other tendency which is found in "open systems" of which "closed systems" are but special cases. This tendency is towards order and carries with it a value-quality aspect. It proceeds in a series of discrete levels which represent a hierarchy of wholes and parts, and it operates in both the inorganic and organic realms. It is at work in molecules and polymers, in solar systems and galaxies, in all self-assembling and replicating systems, in the preorganic and organic structures

culminating—as we like to suppose to be the case—in Man. While it is perfectly safe to assume that this tendency operates within the universe, it is more than doubtful that it can be accommodated within the framework of any reductionist explanation, so much more so as this tendency towards order appears to have a self-organizing, self-renewing capacity which cuts across the boundaries set up by the nature of specific systems. This in itself has far-reaching consequences; it makes the traditional distinction between physical and psychic, material and spiritual as separate “entities” rather obsolete. Of course, we will continue using these terms, just as we continue using such terms as space, time, motion although they have completely changed in character with the breakdown of the mechanistic conception of the universe.

In attempting to give an account of this tendency towards order and increasing complexity we cannot but use metaphorical language which, on the one hand, retains something of the inherent dynamics of experience (from which we start) in the images it projects, but, on the other, lends itself easily and quickly to becoming debased into an explanatory translation of an event that in itself is a mystery, into an impossibly clear-cut corpuscular entity or “thing” which, whether animate or inanimate, leaves us pretty much unconcerned and cold.

The Sanskrit word *kuṇḍalinī* is such a metaphoric term. Literally translated it means “of a spiral nature,” and the implication is that of a double spiral moved up into three dimensions. Such a spiral has its origin and end in the opposite poles of a central axis on which each point of intersection, metaphorically termed *cakra* “wheel” and pictured as lotus-petals, is suggestive of horizontal planes which yet remain dynamic regimes permitting energy exchange and ensuring evolutionary progression. It is only by grasping the dialectical interplay between “top and bottom,” “head and tail,” “apex and base” within this scheme that one avoids the splitting-off of the one pole from the other. Yet this separation took place when the Sāṃkhya system with its rigid dualism was grafted on this interplay, whereby its dynamics was destroyed, and its coherence was broken up into discrete entities which eventually lost all meanings in themselves.

According to this system which deeply influenced Hinduistic thinking, the Self (*ātman*)—this term is a masculine noun and what



it stands for is anthropomorphized as a He—, like Kant's transcendental or Pure Ego, stands in splendid isolation from the rest of what is. Although claimed to be "pure intelligence," He does not feel, think or engage in any activity that might be associated with intelligent life—hence this Self or *ātman* turns out to be the perfect example of "spiritual" entropy. However, wherever we look we find action, thought, feelings. All this belongs, without exception, to the *prakṛti*—this term is a feminine noun and what it stands for is anthropomorphized as a She. It is this She that evolves into the "world," both physical and mental, and whose sole purpose is to entertain Him, the Self, by Her performances; therefore, "more power to Her" (*śakti*)! The absurdity of this system is underlined by the fact that, according to its own position, the subject (ego, self—regardless of how we "define" *a* or *the* self and regardless of whether we write it with a small or a capital letter, we deal with *a* subject which "exists" only *in abstracto*, hermetically sealed) is an evolution of *prakṛti* which makes a separate *ātman* (self, subject) quite redundant. Conversely the antics of the *prakṛti* turn out to be utterly pointless and therefore in the end She ceases to perform, Her granular constituents of *sattva*, *rajas* and *tamas*, accounting for the mental-spiritual, the emotional, and the physical-material respectively, become equilibrated with not the slightest chance for random fluctuations—the perfect example of "physical" entropy.

Grafting this system on *kundalinī yoga* not only twisted what was termed *kundalinī* beyond recognition but also had a devastating effect on what was referred to as *yoga*. It lost its original connotation of "harnessing," the indispensable *yamas* (restraints as for instance abstention from falsehood) and *niyamas* (obligations as for instance study) with the exception of the last one, which may have been a later addition, were practically thrown out, and by the time of the Arab scholar and scientist al-Bīrūnī (973–1048) only the last obligation denoting, in modern terms, "psychological fixation" remained and has been marketed ever since under its label "absorption in God" (*īśvara-praṇidhāna*). It is important to note that in ancient India the term *īśvara* was meant for a low-level intelligence audience and it is worth pondering that the notion of God in any of its three possible applications determined by popular, theological, and representational (speculative-philosophical) thinking does not occur in early Yoga nor even in early Sāṃkhya.

It is now sufficiently obvious that subjectivity, be it labelled a transcendental or Pure Ego, a Self (*ātman*) or even The Supreme Self (*paramātman*)—actually meaning only “more (*parama*) of the same stuff (*ātman*)”—remains a barren, lifeless and life-denying postulate which, to make matters worse, even in its modern guise of a “male archetype” has little relevance to the individual who is seeking to understand himself in his life. And the disquieting and embarrassing fact is that the concrete searching individual is either a man or a woman, each presenting a distinct mode of existing and “world” awareness. Similarly, it is impossible to resort to objectivity and to distill from the *prakṛti*, letting both man and woman evolve, the “eternal feminine” which by contrast with the upliftingly sexless “Pure Ego,” “self” or *ātman* has all the fascinations and allurements of sex which make Her such a bonanza for Freudian psychologists, but simultaneously an “object” of disdain for the self- (or ego- or *ātman*- or “God”-) centred apostle of “spiritual” entropy for whom She is the constant reminder of his impotence (in the widest sense of the word).

Fortunately, *kuṇḍalinī* proper has little to do with these distortions by deterministic-reductionist thinking. What is termed *kuṇḍalinī* and *cakras* is, in a sense, a multi-echelon system, whose dynamics is experience, which may move in the direction either of subjectivity or of objectivity, but itself is neither and never exhausts itself in either. *Kuṇḍalinī* is, to use metaphorical language, the source and mainstay of all life which, if we want to stay alive, we must tap. But how can we do so? The answer is given in the step-by-step exercises of this book.

H. V. Guenther, Ph.D.  
 Head of Department  
 of Far Eastern Studies  
 University of Saskatchewan  
 Saskatoon, Canada





## Introduction

---

SWAMI SIVANANDA RADHA has written a book destined to become a classic in the literature of altered states of consciousness. She has demystified Kundalini Yoga and has presented its concepts and practices in a manner that is clear, simple, and useful. Swami Radha does not play metaphysical games with her readers. She does not profess to hold esoteric secrets from them. She does not even make too much of her own personal experiences.

What does Swami Radha do? She reminds us of those values in life which are the most significant. She teaches us how to develop our latent spiritual potentials. And she teaches us how to flow with the evolutionary process which will eventually elevate our entire world to higher levels of existence.

Using the structure of the Yogic Cakras (or Chakras), Swami Radha artfully weaves her themes and expands on them. She begins with the root Cakra and uses it, and each successive Cakra, as the springboard from which to introduce new ideas and develop thoughts already presented.

It seems to me that Swami Radha uses three major types of word/thought patterns. She utilizes classical Hindu symbolism. An example of this is her beautiful description of lotus symbolism. She presents instructions for Yoga practice and meditation, and she gives insights and personal advice gleaned from a lifetime of reflection.

Swami Radha sees Yoga as a process of "dehypnotizing" by the constant invoking of awareness. For her, the achievement of spiritual growth depends upon avoiding external suggestion and becoming independent of anything which is not internal. This stress on independence can be seen in her answer to the question of woman's role in the cosmos: woman must find her own place and "fulfill herself through none other." Indeed, it is significant that this book is written by a woman because its brilliance and wisdom belie the sexist bias of many religious traditions which have accorded a secondary, subservient role to women throughout the ages.

Swami Radha has succeeded in making the symbols of the

Hindu deities practical, noting that they are indicators of what the aspirant must do. As a result, the book is of potential assistance to teachers, spiritual counselors, and psychotherapists. It represents a splendid contribution of the Kundalini tradition to contemporary helping professions.

My own favorite chapter presents a provocative and profound discussion of consciousness, energy, and "brainstorming." However, the entire book is filled with nuggets of Swami Radha's insight as she discusses love, sex, imagination, language, song, touch, sin, healing, and dozens of other topics.

At the end of the book she presents a vivid description of the Kundalini Fire, writing, "It is a fire of awareness which burns ignorance so that life takes on a new meaning and all previous concepts are burned up. It turns the individual upside-down into a new being." Swami Radha has succeeded magnificently in describing the Kundalini tradition and in making it accessible for those individuals in our troubled culture who are badly in need of its cleansing flame.

Stanley Krippner, Ph.D.  
Humanistic Psychology Institute  
San Francisco, California.





Hand

Turner

*Kuṇḍalinī*

Yoga for the West

# The Seven Chakras



## Levels of Consciousness

VIEW FROM THE FRONT



## A Word from the Author

---

THE IDEA OF WRITING a book on Kuṇḍalinī Yoga, when first suggested by my students, did not appeal to me at all. Yet as students took notes and taped instructions, it occurred to me that this type of groundwork, put together into a book, might indeed be helpful. Scholarly works, translations of the sacred Texts (and we are most grateful to the scholars who have undertaken the formidable task of translating old Scriptures) are necessary for study, but only after a foundation has been laid.

Modern man and woman are under tremendous pressures to-day, perhaps greater than at any other time in history. Whatever the lifestyle, one seems to move too fast to digest the experiences that take place during each day. The pressure felt is not exclusively because of work, although this may be part of it, but because of the enormous amount of material that has to be assimilated by an individual to survive in a highly competitive environment. The complexity of life has become such that one becomes either panicky or lethargic. In the latter case, the attitude of "It doesn't matter anyway" may act as a *key sentence* in the mind and, through its unaware repetition, may achieve an almost hypnotic effect. Once settled in the mind, it is kept alive by emotions that can be both desperate and depressive. If violence is not one's nature, resignation to life seems the only way. The natural life rhythm simply cannot absorb the constant impact of news, television, urban living, combined with the many power struggles which are outside the domain of an individual's control. "Live NOW" becomes the motto. However, this is an unfortunate reaction leading one ever faster down the road to disaster, encouraging self-indulgence and excesses on many levels.

Modern technology, despite the numerous and superficially impressive advances, is rather a punishment in disguise, increasing the burden for the average individual. With the massive bombardment of the senses which supposedly brings relaxation, relief, and pleasure, men and women are driven away from their inner being. The true source of power and energy renewal is buried to such a

degree that help is needed to rediscover it. There is no point in an individual expecting this help from technology and the manipulators of power. A totally new approach has to be worked out in order for life to have any meaning besides the dollar and what it stands for.

The sense of the inner self, of that knowing from within, is the only secure foundation on which to build one's life. The need to come back to this inner core is very great, and it is my hope that help will be found to make that return through the material in this book.

Here I have attempted to steer a *middle course* (not that of the full *renunciate*) by presenting as clear an account as possible of what Kuṇḍalinī is, along with exercises which will help interested individuals in their development. It is along the lines of what my own teacher called "laying the foundation," as it will prepare one to move further along the Path of Kuṇḍalinī. For centuries Kuṇḍalinī was veiled in mystery because it was only related from the Guru to a disciple who had to prove himself in many ways. Since the invention of print, many previously handwritten manuscripts have been translated and have become available to the public. People with little or no background and therefore limited understanding were attracted to such publications. The mind, ever ready to create new and colorful fabrics, grasps this opportunity to interpret according to its fancy. When this is done with something as powerful as Kuṇḍalinī Energy, it can lead to all sorts of disorders.

Kuṇḍalinī Energy manifests itself in as many ways as the sun has rays. In most people the Energy is latent. Like electricity, it is neutral. The Gurus stress the need to gain control of any kind of power. To illustrate this point, one could compare such control to an electric-light dimmer, which, with each turn of the dial, gradually releases more power and so increases the light. With any kind of energy—anger, for example, which can express great power—control is essential. For those who have laid the foundation by learning self-mastery, the Kuṇḍalinī Energy, when understood, can be controlled at will. The foundation must be built slowly and carefully so that this ability to control can be developed. The process of evolution, of which men and women are a part, forces them to develop physically and mentally so that higher levels of consciousness can fully unfold. The choice for both sexes is to cooperate with the law of evolution



or to be a victim of it. It is essential to do the groundwork so that the individual can handle the Energy when it does begin to stir. It seldom happens suddenly. The aim is Liberation in all areas of man, wherever limitation may exist.

*The first stage in Kuṇḍalinī Yoga is becoming aware.* It presents a well laid-out plan which encompasses more and more aspects of one's life. Like concentric circles, it is ever-expanding. Once the principal idea that moves like a red thread through the levels of consciousness is understood, a marvelous way of life is opened to the individual. There is a vast potential which lies within each of us—potential of energy, power, heightened perception, awareness. Evolution for man must now refer to evolution of consciousness, and of this Kuṇḍalinī offers a blueprint of the vast mine to be tapped.

My own acquaintance with Kuṇḍalinī Yoga came through direct teaching while I was in India. The difference in cultural background proved often to be perplexing, leading to confusion and misinterpretations. But my desire to learn and to know was so great that this may have created by itself a sensitivity, helping me to understand what was presented to me, helping me to absorb what was given on each occasion, even though these "seeds" took their own time to germinate.

Even ordinary changes in life are often resisted because of the uncertainty of the unknown. This insecurity is due to the intellect's putting itself on the throne of omniscience and dismissing what it does not know as non-existent. When the unknown is encountered the intellect, together with the emotions, puts up a struggle to eliminate it or explain it away. Because of this human attitude, man knows little about himself and is so timid about finding out that only a very few courageous persons can free themselves from this limitation. The progress of human life is very slow. Those who dare to explore man's possible powers tend to keep the secrets to themselves.

We can use our intellect differently, as my teacher pointed out to me. He declared that *a person of high intellect was one who could learn from the mistakes of others, without having to repeat them.* He also said "*All suffering is self-created because of ignorance. Remove ignorance and there will be no suffering.*" The Kuṇḍalinī Energy, properly handled and controlled, can become a powerful tool in one's life. It makes its presence felt most of the time accidentally

or only in a limited way as clairvoyance, clairaudience, or personal magnetism.

Many exercises have been given, some of them in a form that the aspirant may consider "skimpy" or not clearly defined. The reason for the lack of definition is to exert as little influence and so allow the aspirant as much freedom and autonomy as possible. The Eastern teacher will not take the joy of discovery from the student and I have followed this tradition.

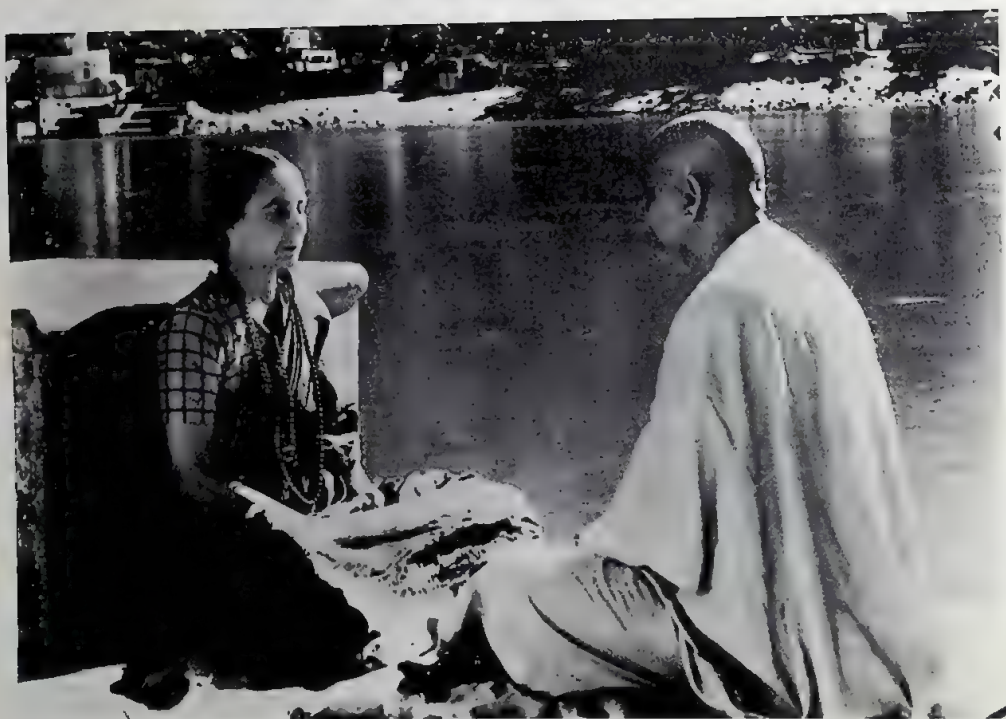
In summary, the purpose of this book is to give the tools by which those who wish to cooperate with the process of evolution can do so. There is no mystification about the awakening of Kuṇḍalinī, yet this process leads to the mystical experience.



## Chapter One



## *The Aspirant*



Swami Sivananda Radha and Swami Sivananda Sarasvati



# The Aspirant

**S**ELF-DEVELOPMENT in Yoga may, in the initial stages, seem to have much in common with the psychological approaches of the human growth movement. However, the goals are fundamentally different. The person who undertakes human growth therapy works towards self-acceptance, efficient functioning in everyday life, mature relationships not based on emotional needs. But the spiritual aspirant, man or woman, looks at this motivation from a different perspective. There is already an innate perception, however vague, that there is more to life than having a family, friends, reasonable success—"the good life." For such a person the goal is liberation from all limitations, realizing all man's potentials and, finally, the Self.

Anyone entering the Path of Kuṇḍalinī Yoga must clarify the reasons and motivation for considering such an undertaking. Any building, be it a storeroom, a tiny house or a big mansion, needs a foundation. The type of foundation reflects the purpose of the building to be constructed. Similarly, the foundation of a spiritual life indicates the perception of the purpose of life, and the way of life chosen will reflect this purpose. During the time that the foundation is laid, the aspirant will need special tools to help in this development. Yogic exercises and spiritual practice provide these tools.

The question to be asked is: "What is the purpose of my life? What makes my life worth living?" This is the beginning of self-inquiry, and in the pages that follow it will frequently be asked, "What do you mean by. . . ." such words as consciousness, mind, ego. "What are their characteristics? Do you use these words synonymously, or is there a difference?" Without such self-inquiry, you are subject to the authority and opinions of others—parents, friends, the mass media, and so on. We must investigate all of our concepts and ideas, anything we have accepted blindly, without question. Such unquestioning acceptance of authority is tantamount to allowing our-

selves to be hypnotized, programmed, conditioned. We must ask, "What is hypnosis? Where (in what areas of my life) am I hypnotized?" You may find that you are indeed being hypnotized and that in your early years you were programmed by the ideas and, in some cases, the misconceptions of the adults around you. Perhaps you were told, "You can't play outside if it's raining because you will catch a cold." Years later, you may still catch cold on a rainy day. We condition ourselves with such ideas as, "I only slept for four hours last night so I will be tired by this afternoon." We tell ourselves, "I hate getting up in the morning," but do we really mean, "I am unwilling to face the daily problems"? The words "hypnosis," "conditioning," "programming" need to be very carefully investigated in the light of your own experience and understanding. Not what the book says. Not what the hypnotist, teacher or television says. What do *you* mean by them?

In the course of spiritual growth, all of our concepts, ideas, and beliefs have to be investigated and re-evaluated over and over again. What you are thinking now may hold no value in three months or three years. You will have grown, your awareness will have increased, and your level of understanding will have risen. From being a sleepwalker, a hypnotized or conditioned person, you gradually become a person who is aware. The process of waking up from ignorance and delusion, of becoming free from as many limitations as possible, and eventually of reaching the goal of Cosmic Consciousness—this is the purpose of the Path of Kuṇḍalinī.

There are a number of pitfalls against which the aspirant must be on guard. The first is the habit of making assumptions. "I assume" means "I really don't know," and all discussions that are based only on assumption are futile and useless. The assumption that life must always be exciting can lead the aspirant to another pitfall: seeking to develop psychic powers. These powers are not in themselves harmful or a hindrance to further development. It is rather the self-indulgence, the need for continuous excitement that will finally lead to downfall on the spiritual path, as one loses sight of the goal in the search for entertainment. This attitude will prevent the development of inner peace and harmony and the achievement of depth and quality in human relationships or personal experience. To live between boredom and excitement is to be caught on a teeter-totter, having little control of your destiny, subject to the vicissitudes of life. The purpose

of Kuṇḍalinī Yoga is to become aware and to know yourself. This is the path that leads to freedom.

Another pitfall for the aspirant is to seek a Guru on the basis of a display of psychic powers. These are in no way evidence of a high level of spirituality. They may be very useful, and many who have developed these powers have done good work (in such cases as mysterious disappearance of people or objects). But others have developed them to promote their self-importance and personal gain. Psychic ability is no proof of being a great Guru, Yogi or Master, or even of being spiritual.

Surrender and humility are the most important requirements for practicing Kuṇḍalinī Yoga. When all the exercises have been done and a certain degree of self-mastery, concentration, meditation, and contemplation has been achieved, you may go in search of your Guru. The aspirant may ask, why not now, at this stage? Because the Teachings take for granted that this foundation of self-discipline has already been laid. No one can be taught to write poetry when the alphabet has not yet been learned.

Awareness will come in degrees and at one point in the process of development a Guru will be necessary. You would not expect to become a qualified doctor solely through studying medicine theoretically. Reading about surgical procedures would not give one the courage to perform an operation. Treatment or surgery on the mind demands a spiritual teacher, for in both cases the practical guidance is needed. From an Eastern point of view, all we learn in school is only information. Knowledge is gained from personal experience and reflection.

Many Westerners find it difficult to put their faith in something from which there is no tangible return. The fear of putting years of effort into what could prove to be an illusion is understandable. The proof that this arduous task of self-development is worth all the effort lies in the emergence of self-mastery in your life. The self-control achieved by the exercises is itself a power. Increased concentration, control of emotions, growing awareness, loss of fear, growing courage, an inner knowing and security all pave the road to realization and give proof to the aspirant that the Road is indeed real.

So any potential aspirant, after much thought on the subject of Kuṇḍalinī, must ask some pertinent questions: What is really in-



volved? What is this process of learning? Do I want to learn? What can I gain from it? What are the obstacles to learning? Can they be overcome? How? What does it mean to be an aspirant? What is my motive for interest in the spiritual life?

The practice of Kuṇḍalinī Yoga is deeply involving. Mere dabbling is dangerous; half-knowledge is worse than no knowledge at all. No progress is possible through reading the sacred Texts and intellectualizing about their contents. Many people are victims of their own self-deception, judging themselves to be good people and assuming that they have faith. How the knowledge gained is applied to your life is essentially the determining factor. Sincerity is the keynote. The process of learning is a continuous one—as with the concert pianist, practice never stops. “Do I want to learn?” is then an important decision which must be supported by the will—it is indeed a decision of will. In contrast to will, there is self-will, which creates obstacles—intellectualizations and justifications—that divert the aspirant from the Path. Self-discipline, enforced by the will, must be exercised to overcome these obstacles. Each victory makes one stronger.

Where does this leave the aspirant who is married<sup>1</sup>, who may have an earnest yearning toward expanded consciousness? My Guru, Swami Sivananda (of Rishikesh), would always suggest that family life was an excellent opportunity to practice selfless service, to develop consideration, love, patience, and understanding, and to expand that kindness to others who are not of one's kin; to consider oneself to be God's caretaker of the family and those in need, and to love without attachment. This, he would say, is the best preparation for the time when spiritual practice can be pursued with all the intensity of which one is capable. Since one cannot serve two masters, it may be better to accept that limitation while it exists and spend that time in self-development.

The aspirant must be prepared to face the problem of “What will other people think?” There may be accusations, “Aren't you being selfish? Isn't this just another ego trip? What a terrible thing to do to your family!” Some academic careers may take twelve years' training—which may not make one a better person, or any wiser as far as personal life is concerned. Yet this “selfish” period, devoted to acquiring knowledge and developing skills in a particular field, is never questioned. But, when it comes to self-development to be-

come a better person, to find meaning in life, the time and effort spent seem to require justification.

People once considered friends may turn cold. They feel challenged and, not prepared to accept the challenge, they turn away. Suddenly the Path seems very lonely. There is no one to turn to, no shoulder to lean on. The Light that you are following seems less visible. However, at the same time another phase becomes apparent. A sense of freedom from the tyranny of social obligation, from continually struggling to meet other people's expectations, is experienced. It is like a breath of fresh air!

The aspirant will, every now and then, be assailed by doubt. The question must be asked, "Do I doubt so that I don't have to act, so that I can keep a back door open through which I can escape?" or "Do I doubt because I have an intuitive perception that this doubt could expand my present limited ideas?"

The first kind of doubt is an obstacle created by self-will. The second is a necessary step in the process of development. Be patient. Any discovery by yourself, however small, becomes a knowing within that provides another stone for a foundation of stability and security. Observation and awareness develop in an aspirant in proportion to the desire to know oneself, by the courage to accept that which is observed and, finally, by the application of the will to make the necessary changes.

Worship seems to have lost its place in modern life. Yet there is in every man and woman, coming to the foreground in precious moments, the value, the greatness, and the rightness to worship that which is a great inspiration. Somewhere within everyone there is the knowing of a greater Power, and it is this inner knowing that generates within us the urge to worship. When we recognize that we are a bridge between two worlds, the mental-physical-material on the one hand and the spiritual on the other, and when we walk over this bridge, there is suddenly a profound humility as we realize the great and awesome Power.

The aspirant must decide if he or she is prepared to embark upon this road, prepared to do the work and make the sacrifices. Let there be no mistake, the "Pearl of Great Price" exacts its price.

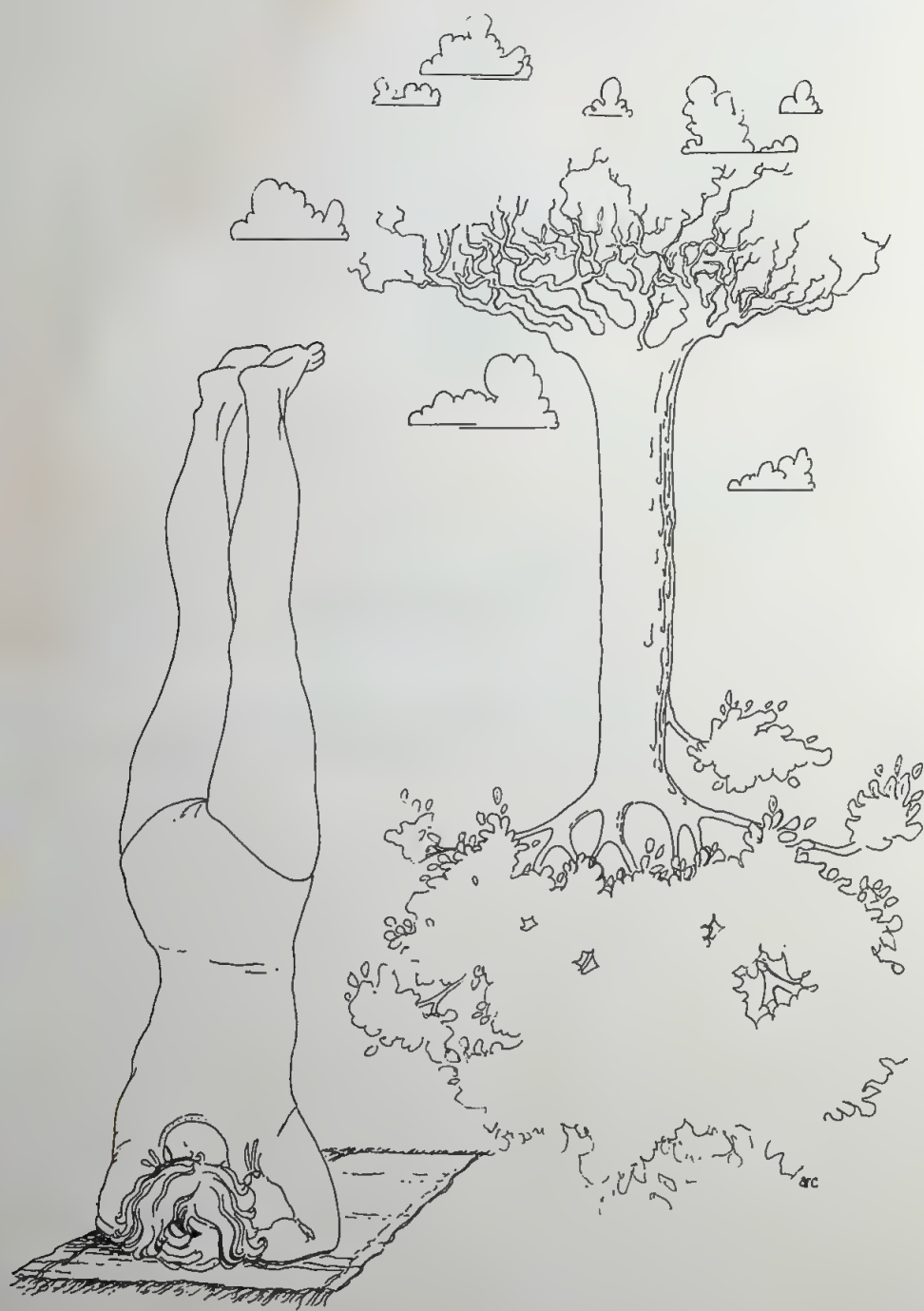
*"The purpose and meaning of life can be  
found deep within the mystical meanings of  
the Haṭha Yoga āsanas."*



## Chapter Two



# *Mystical Aspects* of Haṭha Yoga



*"The feet are now rooted in the Divine inspiration of heaven."*

# Mystical Aspects of Haṭha Yoga

**H**AṬHA YOGA is one aspect of Kuṇḍalinī Yoga and plays an important part in the development of the aspirant. The hermeneutical interpretation of the word *haṭha* expresses the polarity in which all beings function. *Ha* is said to be the *positive* or active principle of existence, symbolized by the sun, heat, light, and creativity. *Ṭha* is correspondingly the *negative* or reflective principle, symbolized by the moon, cold, darkness, and receptivity. The performance in slow motion of the gentle, graceful movements of Haṭha Yoga and the reflective holding of various āsanas allow body, mind, and spirit to come into harmony through the balance of these two basic energies. Constant disciplined practice of breathing exercises, postures, and relaxation subtly transforms the body into a vital spiritual tool through which levels of intuitive understanding are reached, and the mystical aspects of Haṭha Yoga gradually unfold and reveal their secrets.

*Balancing  
polarities*

Yoga is the oldest known science of physical and mental self-development, caring for the body under the intelligent control of the mind. Thousands of years ago the Yogis recognized man's basic need for discipline to counteract the physical and spiritual deterioration caused by the mere fight for survival. They were aware that when the positive and negative currents by which the human body is enlivened are in equilibrium we enjoy perfect health. Through

*Health aspects*



Hatha Yoga one can achieve absolute control over the whole body, thus improving the condition of every part and maintaining the body as a necessary and valuable tool of human evolution.

*Body as a  
spiritual tool*

The body is the instrument through which we act out our desires and exercise our will. The five senses, our organs of perception and experience of the world around us, are located in the body. The brain functions as the physical organ which the mind utilizes to interpret all these experiences. The training of body and mind through Hatha Yoga helps to bring bodily urges, emotions, and misdirected will-power under control. Hatha Yoga in its various aspects is a means to reach a new understanding of the body and how to use it as the most wonderful tool humans have. It is the aim of the Yogi to attain awareness in all areas of the body, the senses, and the mind.

*Self-discovery*

Many descriptions of the physical benefits of regular Hatha Yoga practice are available to the Westerner, and some information on the psychological aspects as well. The mystical aspects, however, are largely unrecognized or misinterpreted in Western writing. In the Eastern tradition of teaching the aspirant is not "spoon-fed" information, but rather is stimulated by the Guru to be a discoverer, an adventurer, an investigator of his or her own body laboratory. Practicing Yogis agree that only one āsana, the headstand, can be used as an explanation to show the mystical meanings of Hatha Yoga. The revelation of the meaning of other āsanās is left to individual self-discovery. Why is this so important? What you find out for yourself becomes an enormous source of energy and inspires you to keep on expanding your limitations, to find out more, to understand more. It is up to you to think intuitively, to investigate, to inquire, because the yogic teacher will not take the joy and pleasure of discovery from you. The less that is fed to the mind, the more insight you get by yourself. Personal insight also prevents the painful doubt,

"Have I really experienced this, or have I only imagined an illusion based on what I have been told?"

The headstand (*sālambaśirsāsana*) is one of the important āsanās. An investigation of the various aspects of this āsana reveals the depth of symbolic and mystical expression of which the disciplined body is capable.

*Symbolic  
aspects of  
headstand*

Once you are able to perform this āsana properly and with confidence, and can maintain balance for several minutes while remaining mentally relaxed and alert, you are ready to proceed to another level of experience. In order to contact the deeper message of any āsana, you must be able to surrender self-will and cultivate the ability to listen with intuition.

Begin your investigation on the psychological level. Open your eyes and look at your familiar surroundings—obviously you see everything upside-down. Be aware of what you feel and think. When the āsana has been completed, apply your observations to another level of sight and write down your reaction to looking at life's events *upside-down* in your mind's eye. Now look at your most cherished beliefs. Write them down. The next step is to take the opposite viewpoint and observe what you feel. Finally, become your own opponent without becoming involved in argument and opposition with anyone else. What is gained? The answer is in the struggle alone, the expansion of limitations by confronting your own concepts, and the greater freedom and responsibility resulting from this expansion.

*Psychological  
aspects*

Another psychological aspect can be illustrated by comparing the erect human body to a tree. The feet, firmly placed on the ground, correspond to the roots of the tree, its foundation and source of nourishment. This might indicate that in daily life you stand firmly on the ground to meet life's demands. *Your head is in space or heaven.* The word "heaven" in this instance means in contact with life's energy, with a wisdom beyond the intellect.

If your mind is *rooted in the earth of daily life*, and there are other "trees" next to you, the roots soon intertwine in many areas, and eventually you cannot distinguish your own roots from others. Are your foundations—your concepts and beliefs—really yours, or do they just take the sap and energy from other roots? The ego pushes its roots very deep—it does not want to be uprooted at any cost.

In the headstand this tree is turned upside-down. The head is no longer in the clouds, but has become well-rooted and practical, with *grounded* intellectual abilities. The feet are now rooted in the Divine inspiration of heaven. Although the old hard facts no longer suffice in themselves, the grounded head has not lost its contact with heaven, for inspirational nourishment is now possible that will hold up under practical application and also increase inspirational perception.

*Mystical  
aspects*

The analogy of the human tree can be expanded in preparation for the mystical aspects of the headstand. The spine is like the trunk of the tree, along which are located the various Cakras. The top of the head is the crowning blossom of this flowering tree, the thousand petalled Lotus of the Sahasrāra Cakra. A further symbolic term—*nectar and ambrosia*—must also be clarified. This term stands for intuition and insight of the highest order.

During the headstand the Mūlādhāra Cakra is in the top position. The place of passion and the emotional use of energy is like a flame. Passion's energy can be used in self-service, in escalating mind and expanding awareness. While the body is in the normal position the Divine inspirations of nectar and ambrosia fall into the fire of passion and are burned, their benefits wasted. It must be understood that passion is not evil or bad in itself, but the intensity of passionate desire prevents perceptions of a very fine nature, as a spicy dish dulls the taste buds for appreciating a subtle, new, and different taste. In the headstand



position the aspirant cannot “feed this flame” to keep it burning. Intuitive perception is no longer killed in the fire of any type of passion, but is preserved for higher spiritual development.

Prāṇic Energy is part of the nectar and ambrosia manifest. During the holding of this āsana Prāṇic Energy moves around the body, invigorating it, giving it extra energy. This Energy does not only flow through the levels of consciousness, but is also located in the spine and the vital organs. If the aspirant always connects the holding of the āsana with a deep spiritual thought, even further energy will be generated for the purpose of spiritual growth and the expanding of present limitations.

*Prāṇic  
Energy*

The performance of āsanās can become a fantastic experience of time and space. In moving the body into a posture, you are moving through time and space. When you hold the position you are given an opportunity to ponder the meaning of space and time and penetrate the mystical meanings of the āsanās. “I am sitting in this position for three minutes. What is time? Who am I?” When you can disregard the daily image you see in the mirror and think of yourself beyond the body, you have taken the first step.

*Time and  
space*

The human body is indeed something marvelous and wonderful. Daily we see the miracles of human form—that beautiful apparatus you call your hand or your eyes, the magic mirror of your mind, the limitless creativity of your imagination. The purpose and meaning of life can be found deep within the mystical meanings of the Haṭha Yoga āsanās.



Note: No āsanās have been included because there are excellent books available, some of which are listed in the suggested reading in the back of this book.

*"The aspirant should approach the Mother first, so that She may introduce the spiritual Child to the Father for illumination or Self-realization."*

## Chapter Three



# *Divine Mother Śakti* (the Devī)





Swami Sivananda Sarasvati

# Śakti-Yoga Philosophy

QUOTES FROM THE LATE

Swami Sivananda Sarasvati

OF RISHIKESH, INDIA

**M**OTHER WORSHIP is the worship of God as the Divine Mother, as the power of the Lord or the cosmic energy. Śakti, then, is energy. Just as one cannot separate heat from fire, so also one cannot separate Śakti from Śākta. Śakti and Śākta are one. They are inseparable.

Electricity, magnetism, force, heat, light, the five elements and their combinations are all external manifestations of Śakti. Intelligence, discrimination, psychic power and will are all Her manifestations. She keeps up the Līlā of the Lord through the three Guṇas, Sattva, Rajas and Tamas. Even lust, anger, greed, egoism and pride are also Her manifestations. Her manifestations are countless.

She lies dormant in the Mūlādhāra Cakra in the form of a serpentine power or coiled up energy known as the Kuṇḍalinī Śakti. She is at the centre of the life of the universe. She is the primal force of life that underlies all existence. She vitalises the body through Her energy. She is the energy in the sun, the fragrance in the flowers, the beauty in the landscape, the Gāyatrī or the Blessed Mother in the Vedas, She is the colour in the rainbow, intelligence in the mind, devotion in worship.

The worship of Divine Mother means the total acceptance of all creation. In practical terms the need for all the "groundwork" as is laid out in the following chapters, is necessary to overcome any dislikes, aversions, misuse, perversions. All the obstacles of any type of rejection, for whatever reason (including the rejection of the good in oneself and instead succumbing to such negative qualities as greed) must be overcome. For the refinement of

the senses, external worship, rituals and ceremonies can make a valuable contribution, particularly in keeping a check on intellectual pride.

Kuṇḍalinī is Śakti power symbolized by Divine Mother. She is pure blissful consciousness. She is the Mother of nature. It behooves, therefore, that the aspirant should approach the Mother first, so that She may introduce Her spiritual child to the Father for its illumination or Self-realisation. That is the reason why the devotees have placed Rādhā, Sītā, Lakṣmī, first in the jugal names, viz, Rādhā Kṛṣṇa, Sītā Rāma, Lakṣmī Nārāyaṇa.

Devī is Śakti of Lord Śiva. She is Jada-śakti and Cit-śakti. She is Icchā-śakti, Kriyā-śakti and Jñāna-śakti. She is Māyā-śakti. Śakti is Prakṛti, Māyā, Mahāmāyā, Śrī Vidyā, Śakti is Brahman itself. She is Lalitā, Kuṇḍalinī, Rājeśvarī and Tripurasundarī, Satī, Pārvatī. Satī manifested to Lord Śiva in the ten forms as the Dāsa Mahāvidyā, viz, Kālī, Bagalmukhī, Chinnamastā, Bhuvaneśvarī, Mātangi, Ṣoḍśī, Dhūmavati, Tripurasundarī, Tārā and Bhairavī.

Worship of Śakti or Śaktism is one of the oldest and most widespread religions in the world. Everybody in this world wants power, loves to possess power. He is elated by power. He wants to domineer over others through power. War is the outcome of greed for power. Scientists are followers of Śaktism. He who wishes to develop will-power and a charming personality is a follower of Śaktism. In reality, every man in this world is a follower of Śaktism.

Śakti is always with Śiva. They are inseparable like fire and heat. Śakti evolves Nāda and Nāda-bindu. The world is a manifestation of Śakti. Śuddhamāyā, Prakṛti, Nāda, Bindu and the rest are only names for different aspects of Śakti.

The countless universes are only dust of Divine Mother's holy feet. Her glory is ineffable. Her splendour is indescribable. Her greatness is unfathomable. She showers Her grace on Her sincere devotees. She leads the individual soul from Cakra to Cakra, from plane to plane and unifies him with Lord Śiva in the Sahasrāra.

The body is Śakti. The needs of the body are the needs of Śakti. When man enjoys it is Śakti who enjoys through him. His ears, eyes, hands and feet are Hers. She sees through his eyes, works through his hands, and hears through his ears. Body, mind, Prāṇa, egoism, intellect, organs and all the other functions are Her manifestations.

Śaktism speaks of personal and the impersonal aspects of the Godhead. Brahmā is Niṣkala (without Prakṛti) and Sakala (with Prakṛti). The Vedāntin speaks of Nirupadhika Brahman (pure Nirguṇa, Brahmā without





Śākta (Śiva)  
Male Principle of Cosmic Energy  
(author's collection)

*Māyā*) and *Sopadhika Brahmā* (with *Upadhi* or *Māyā*) or *Saguṇa-Brahmā*. It is all the same. Only the names are different. It is a play of words, intellectual gymnastics. In reality the essence is one. Clay only is the truth. All modifications such as pot, etc., are in name only. *Nirguṇa-Brahmā Śakti* is potential whereas *Saguṇa-Brahmā* is kinetic or dynamic.

The basis of Śaktism is the *Veda*. Śaktism upholds that the only source and authority (*Pramāṇa*) regarding transcendental or super-sensual matters such as the nature of Brahman, etc., is *Veda*. Śaktism is only *Vedānta*. The Śāktas have the same spiritual experience as the Vedāntins.

Divine Mother is everywhere triple. She is endowed with the three *guṇas*, *Sattva*, *Rajas*, *Tamas*. She manifests as will (*Ichhā-śakti*), action (*Kriyā-śakti*) and knowledge (*Jñāna-śakti*). She is *Brahma-śakti* (*Sarasvatī*) in conjunction with *Brahmā*; *Viṣṇu-śakti* (*Lakṣmī*) in conjunction with Lord *Viṣṇu*; *Śiva-śakti* (*Gaurī*) in conjunction with Lord *Śiva*. Hence She is called *Tripurasundarī*.

The abode of *Tripurasundarī*, the Divine Mother, is called *Śrī Nāgāra*. This magnificent abode is surrounded by twenty-five ramparts which represent the twenty-five *Tattvas* (principles or qualities). The resplendent *Cintāmaṇi* palace is in the middle. The Divine Mother sits in the *Bindu Pīṭha* in *Śrī Cakra* in that wonderful palace. There is a similar abode for Her in the body of man also. The whole world is Her body. Mountains are Her bones. Rivers are Her veins. Ocean is Her bladder. Sun and moon are Her eyes. Wind is Her breath. *Agni* is Her mouth.

The Śākta enjoys *Bhukti* (enjoyment of the world) and *Mukti* (liberation from all worlds). *Śiva* is an embodiment of Bliss and Knowledge. *Śiva* Himself appears in the form of man with a life of a mixture of pleasure and pain. If you remember this point always, all dualism, all hatred, jealousy, and pride will vanish. You must consider every human function as worship or a religious act. Answering calls of nature, micturition, talking, eating, walking, seeing, hearing become worship of the Lord if you develop the right attitude. It is *Śiva* who works in and through man. Where then is egoism or individuality? All human actions are divine actions. One universal life throbs in the hearts of all, sees in the eyes of all, works in the hands of all, hears in the ears of all. What a magnanimous experience it is, if one can feel this by crushing this little 'I'! The old *Saṃskārās*, the old *Vāsanās*, the old habits of thinking, stand in the way of your realising this Experience—Whole.

The aspirant thinks that the world is identical with the Divine Mother. He moves about thinking his own form to be the form of the Divine Mother



Śakti (the Devī)  
Female Principle of Cosmic Energy  
(author's collection)



and thus beholds oneness everywhere. He also feels that the Divine Mother is identical with Parabrahman.

The advanced Sādhaka feels "I am the Devī and the Devī is in me." He worships himself as Devī instead of adoring any external object. He says "Sāham", "I am She" (Devī, Divine Mother). Śaktism is not mere theory or philosophy. It prescribes systematic Sādhana of Yoga, regular discipline according to the temperament, capacity and degree of evolution of the Sādhaka. It helps the aspirant to arouse the Kuṇḍalinī and unite Her with Lord Śiva and to enjoy the Supreme Bliss of Nirvikalpa Samādhī. When Kuṇḍalinī sleeps man is awake to the world. He has objective consciousness. When She awakes, he sleeps. He loses all consciousness of the world and becomes one with the Lord. In Samādhī the body is maintained by the nectar which flows from the union of Śiva and Śakti with Sahasrāra.

Guru is indispensable for the practice of Śakti Yoga Sādhana. He initiates the aspirant and transmits the divine Śakti.

Physical contact with a female is gross Maithuna. This is due to Paśubbhāva or animal disposition or brutal instinct. Mother Kuṇḍalinī Śakti unites with Lord Śiva in Sahasrāra during Nirvikalpa Samādhī. This is real Maithuna or blissful union. This is due to Divyabhāva or divine disposition. You must rise from Paśubbhāva to Divyabhāva, through Sat Sang, service of Guru, renunciation and dispassion, discrimination, Japa and meditation.

Worship of the Divine Mother with intense faith and perfect devotion and self-surrender will help you to attain Her grace. Through Her grace alone you can attain knowledge of the Imperishable.

Glory to Śrī Tripurasundarī, the World-Mother, who is also Rājā-rājeśvarī and Lalitā Devī. May Her blessings be upon you all!!!

# Woman, The Handmaiden of Divine Mother

*What is woman's place in the cosmos?*

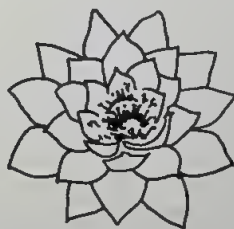
*What is her true function?*

*How can she fulfill herself?*

Woman must find her place, fulfill herself through none other. She is the handmaiden of the Great Goddess, the Divine Mother. Because of the Goddess, life renews itself.

When technological man has finished his creation it becomes destruction. Man is focused on his principles, his order, as he sees it. It is she, the woman, who picks up the pieces to give life a new meaning.

When cultures reach a peak, subside into mediocrity or vanish, the female aspect of creation, the Goddess Śakti, starts a new cycle. Woman is Her handmaiden. She must accept the burden of renewal after destruction. Through her, the Goddess transforms the barren land into fruit-bearing growth, and the bleak world becomes once again dazzled by a million colors of Her creation. Through woman the Great Goddess lets new life emerge and be tenderly cared for. Woman must increase her skills for the service of Divine Mother Śakti, ever keeping the gaze on Her. At one point in time the world and all its fanciful display will vanish. Emptiness precedes fulfillment. Unless she realizes her role in this world drama and is willing to assume this responsibility, woman cannot emerge from her "second position" but, more important, she will miss the purpose of her own life.



*In the Mūlādhāra of yours I worship Him who has nine natures, dancing the great Tāṇḍava, having nine sentiments, together with (His Śakti) Samaya, the quintessence of Lāśya. It is from these two, each having its own presiding form, looking in compassion on the disposition of the origination (of the world) that this world has come into existence, having you as father and mother.*

MANTRA FOR THE MŪLĀDHĀRA CAKRA



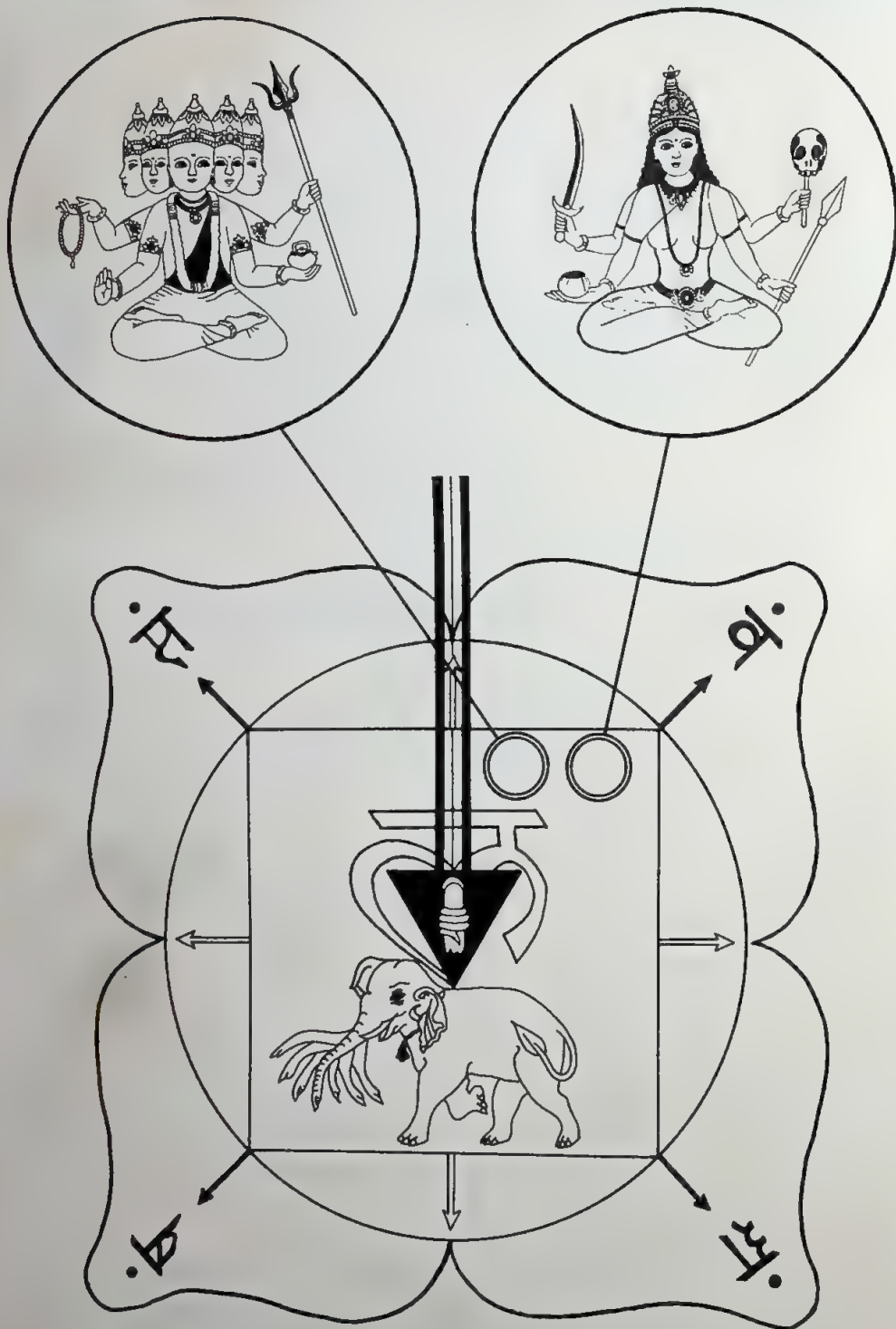
## Chapter Four



# *Mūlādhāra* The First Cakra

GOD: Child Brahmā

GODDESS: Dākini



Mūlādhāra Cakra

# Mūlādhāra

## The First Cakra and its Symbols

MŪLĀDHĀRA: The First Cakra or Lotus.

TATTVA: Differentiating faculty.

56 RAYS: Relate to the earth.

BRAHMĀ: Creative Force.

GANDHA—Smell: The sense controlled by the First Cakra.

The undeveloped human being is sensual, first directed to food by smell. Smell also creates sexual excitement. But if the Path is followed sincerely, the sensitivity of the sense of smell can become so refined that there may be the perception of a Divine Presence by the smell of a fragrance resembling roses or violets, or the delicate scent of incense such as sandalwood.

FOUR Lotus Petals: The four corners of the world.

The Lotus is sacred in the Orient. Many statues of Lord Kṛṣṇa, Śiva, or the Buddha are shown seated on the Lotus with up-turned leaves. This indicates their holiness. If any of the Great Ones is depicted in a standing position, water with a floating Lotus is usually also shown.

COLOR of the Petals: The red of blood, life itself.

Life has to be accepted and has to be rightly lived. Life is precious. Each life is an opportunity to develop latent potentials. One has to accept oneself and all of the human family.



All forms of life are the manifestation of one Power and, therefore, reverence for all life is necessary in order to practice ahimsā (non-injury).

THE LETTERS on the Petals: VAM—ŚAM—ṢAM—SAM.

Before a written language was developed speech was the means of expression and communication. Speech is man's greatest performance. The spoken word has power. This power can express itself positively or negatively. The responsibility rests with the individual.

CIRCLE: Completeness or perfection.

In ancient times ideas of perfection were different from our present concept, a reflection of the difference in mode of living. Racial and cultural backgrounds also affect the view of perfection that is held. Degrees of awareness vary in each individual and this places ideas of completeness and perfection on various levels.

YANTRA—Square: Symbol of the earth.

Not only is this First Cakra the foundation of all other Cakras, but it has itself a beginning. It is like building the foundation for one's house. If the plans have not been well drawn, if the groundwork is sloppy and careless, the foundation will not support the structure. Similarly, one's life must have a good foundation. Careful planning is necessary. During each phase a certain type and amount of work have to be done before the next phase can begin.

ARROWS—Directions:

A specific goal may be missed entirely by running in too many directions. The five senses can push or manipulate, the physical body with its needs can make demands, the awesome power of the mind can exert its influence, all these may drive the human being in different directions. The possibilities for each aspirant, man or woman, are numerous.

YONI—Triangle: Symbol for the female sex.

Sex is a significant force. In the picture of the Cakra the triangle pointing down indicates that the power comes from above. This means that the power to create a new life is not associated with the ego. The Yogis of old held this same viewpoint. The Energy that is manifested in the life of every human being is the responsibility of each individual. It is neutral, and it is the choice of the individual how it is used. To dissipate Energy is irresponsible.

SVAYAMBHŪ—Linga: Symbol for the male sex.

What has been said for the Yoni is true also for the Linga.

CITKALĀ—Crescent Moon: Symbol for the Divine Source of all Energy.

Located on top of the linga, it represents the application of that Energy on the various levels of the individual's development.

3 ½ COILS: Energy expressed in three different ways.

Sattva is purity, rajas is activity and passion, and tamas stands for inertia and darkness. The half coil combines all three and indicates the interplay of those forces. Each aspirant must clarify what a pure mind is, what concepts are held, how these relate to life and in what areas.

AIRĀVATA—Elephant of Indra: White with seven trunks.

In the beginning man is clumsy and heavy like an elephant, trampling everything underfoot; our preconceived ideas do the same thing. The seven trunks stand for the seven most powerful negative characteristics and also the most powerful positive ones. The elephant is an exceptionally strong animal. Strength is needed to overcome the difficulties encountered along the Path in pursuit of the Goal. Many human drives have strength, sex being one of the most powerful. The

elephant is also known to be stubborn, unforgetting, and revengeful. Yet the whiteness of the elephant stands for the fact that basically every human being is Divine.

**ŚABDA**—Sound: Represents speech, the means of self-expression and communication.

In the early stages of human development the power of speech is not fully realized and, in relation to another person, man indeed blunders clumsily like an elephant in what is said and how it is said. In order to hear, one has to be silent and even all speech in the mind has to stop. The voice of conscience can only be heard when all other chatter has subsided. In moments of silence the true śabda is heard like the humming of a bee.

**BĪJA**—Seed Sound: **LAM**

Sometimes the Bīja is also called the Seed Mantra. It is the seed sound from which a particular Energy develops. With inner visualization and contemplation of the hidden meaning, Mantras lead the spirit, lost in thoughts and the pursuit of worldly things, back to pure Essence.

**LAM**: The Bīja or seed sound of the First Cakra.

The word “seed” indicates that there is something that can grow from it. In the seed of the oak, the acorn, the future tree is already contained.

Sound is vibration. A low key or a high key send out different rates of vibration, each one having its own effect on its surroundings. The vibrations of sound can be compared to ripples on the water that have been created by some impulse.

The experience of this Bīja, **LAM**, the seed sound of the Mūlādhāra Cakra, is only slightly perceptible and can be heard not because of intensely hard work, but rather because of sincerity, dedication, humility, and surrender.



B. 0001 10.10

PINGALĀ: The Nāḍī on the right side of the body.

Nāḍīs have been interpreted as psychic nerves in the subtle body. They have been compared by Indian medical doctors to the vagus nerves in the human body, which control the voluntary and involuntary nervous systems. While such an interpretation is not absolutely correct, it still can be used as a steppingstone to a more subtle understanding which comes with the practice of Ha-Ṭha Yoga. *Ha* is connected with Piṅgalā and means hot, the sun, activity.

ĪDĀ: The Nāḍī on the left side of the body.

*Ṭha* is connected with Īdā and is suggestive of coolness, receptivity and, more tangibly, the moon. Hot and cool, the sun and the moon, indicate a pair of opposites. The control of all pairs of opposites in the individual has to be balanced before one attempts to raise the Kuṇḍalinī. It is because of Īdā and Piṅgalā that Haṭha Yoga has its special significance, as they are channels for Prāṇa.

SUṢUMNĀ: The main Nāḍī in the very center of the spine.

It is also the seat of OM. It is the passage through which the Kuṇḍalinī Energy rises. The Suṣumnā connects all the Cakras.

CITRIṆĪ: Three in one, inside Suṣumnā.

This is especially difficult to explain, but the following illustration may help. The human being is made up of a body and a mind, and of speech which is the expression of both. The three in one are sattva, rajas, and tamas.

GOD: Child Brahmā: The male aspect of Energy unmanifest.



Five faces, five dimensions including omniscience, omnipresence, omnipotence.

The intelligence on this level is symbolized by the Child Brahmā.

There is Divinity in everyone, as the complete oak tree is contained in the acorn. In every

human being there is that Divine spark (Self). The only difference between human beings is in the degree of awareness of that potential, the awareness that it can be developed. Again, there are many levels on which intelligence can be applied or ignored. The Child Brahmā is holding objects in His hands and dispelling fears. These objects illustrate methods and exercises by which the aspirant can develop.

## OBJECTS:

### *Daṇḍa—Staff:*

The staff is symbolic for the spine supporting the body. Since man's emergence from the animal kingdom he has walked erect. The levels of consciousness are in the spine where the life force is dominant. The base of the spine is the place where the Kuṇḍalinī Energy is located.

### *Kamaṇḍalu—Gourd:*

The kamaṇḍalu is a container usually made from a gourd or a coconut shell for the purpose of holding water. The Yogi keeps the kamaṇḍalu close in order to quench thirst and to maintain a proper liquid level in the body.

### *Rudrākṣamālā—Rosary:*

A mālā can be compared to a rosary but it has twice as many beads, 108. This is considered a holy number because that is the number of Divine Mother's names. Dried Rudrākṣa seeds are often used to string a mālā. They have five divisions which indicate the five faces of the Child Brahmā and the latent potential within each individual. The mālā is used to assist in counting the repetitions of the name of a Divine aspect such as Śiva or the Divine Mother Śakti. The purpose of such repetition, as in the chanting of all Mantras, is to control the constant conversations that go on in the mind, which the Yogi calls the mental background noises.

### *Abhaya mudrā—Gesture Dispelling Fear:*

With the lower right hand the Child Brahmā makes this gesture, meaning that all fear will be dispelled when there is sincerity, right intent, and humility.

GODDESS: Dākinī: The female aspect of Energy manifest.



The intelligence on this level is symbolized by the Dākinī.

#### OBJECTS:

##### *Sūla—Spear:*

On the primitive level the spear has been used to hunt animals. Animals are symbols of various characteristics in the human being. The elephant stands for strength, the tiger for killing, the mouse for timidity, and so on. When skill has been achieved the spear will hit the target. The question that the aspirant should ask is, "What is the target in my life? Do I live by awareness or, like an animal, by instincts?"

##### *Khaṭvāṅga—Staff with Skull on top:*

This is symbolic of a pure or empty mind, one which is free from preconceived ideas which block the way for new perceptions, particularly Divine insight, that is, insight by intuition during meditation, reflection or quietness. In contrast to the preconceived idea stands true knowledge, which is knowing from personal experience. Information is often mistaken for knowledge. The skull is mounted on a staff (the spine). The Energy, then, can rise in the Suṣumnā. The flow of the Divine Energy through the staff or spine, into the empty skull, the mind free of preconceived ideas, is an experience that shakes one's whole foundation. If the Divine Nectar received in those indescribable moments falls into the fire of passion (there are many passions besides sex), like water it steams off and is lost, because the aspirant, caught up in the illusion of worldly affairs, might recognize too late what has taken place.

##### *Khaḍga—Sword:*

The khaḍga is symbolic for discrimination, without which numerous mistakes can be made. The practice of discrimination

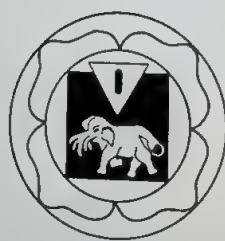


helps to develop a good mind which can reason effectively. Discrimination has to be applied right from the beginning of one's Path, at the onset of the spiritual life. The essential and non-essential must be recognized and sorted out. When the strong tool of discrimination is used during the time of reflection, mistakes are cut down very quickly, emotional, mental pain is minimized and mechanical habits are controlled. Life becomes enjoyable in a very positive and good sense.

*Caṣaka—Drinking Cup:*

When filled with wine the wine is symbolic for Spirit and the aspirant may become intoxicated with drinking this Spirit. One is urged to drink slowly and steadily in small sips with awareness and discrimination to understand and assimilate the Divine Nectar and Ambrosia with intuitive thinking and feeling.

When the Caṣaka is filled with water it symbolizes the water of life. By thought association one can consider quenching one's thirst with this pure water of Divine Wisdom.



# The Goddess of Speech— Śakti

The Devī, the Goddess of Speech present in each Cakra, has to be recognized as an integral part in the process of development.

The great significance of speech, personalized and deified, can perhaps only be understood if it is borne in mind that the ancient poets of the Mantras and the Vedas handed down their wisdom by word of mouth. The spoken word, trusted to memory, can float away into the distance of time because of its intangible nature. This points up the incredible power of memory of these ancient ṛṣis (rishis) and their devotees that they were able to preserve perfectly the ancient Scriptures.

Each letter of the Sanskrit alphabet is on a petal of the sacred Lotus. This is to signify that *every word or sound has power*<sup>2</sup>. This power is not only connected to the emotions and mental activities, but also to a Spirit of the highest order. It can, therefore, lift us to heights we ordinarily do not even anticipate. Speech has two aspects—the audible and the inaudible. Inaudible speech differs from mere talking in one's head; it is an ethereal intuitive perception. It could also be called the Language of the Heart.

The power in a word or sound is Śakti, therefore, She is called the Divine Mother in the Mūlādhāra Cakra. She is the Goddess of Speech. On the petals of the First Cakra appear the first four letters. Because the Path of Kuṇḍalinī is a path of evolution, it becomes evident that with each Cakra there is an increased perception of Power manifest producing all forthcoming letters.

The mere naming of things has been man's privilege, of which he makes wide use until awareness of the true power of language is realized. Speech has

*The Devī*

*Significance  
of speech*

*Power:  
of word  
of sound*

*Inaudible  
speech:  
Language of  
the Heart*

*Śakti: power  
of word or  
sound*

*Refinement of  
speech*



The Goddess of Speech—Śakti  
*(author's collection)*



to be refined. One must become aware of one's speech. Coarse language is termed "wrong conduct" for all aspirants of any path. Sensitivity is only gained by refinement and cultivation. As a plant is cultivated, so humans must cultivate themselves to become more sensitive in a positive way. In many scriptural Texts commands or utterances can be found that seem to have the recognition of the power of the word. Its refinement and careful cultivation are reflected not only in the sacred Texts, but also in the poetry of many nations. The poet, like the prophet, is often ahead of his time. Some poetry has an almost prophetic nature.

The ṛṣis, being highly developed seers, were the poets of the ancient writings. They perceived "Divine insight" by an indescribable intuition and power of mind. The power of mind is needed to transmit what has been intuitively perceived into speech. The seers knew of these powers of mind and sound by experience, and they understood the force inherent in the mind and its desire to create. The purpose of the ṛṣis was, by their higher perceptions, to guide mankind. When we speak of powers today, it is often assumed that such powers are meant for the control of others. But the ṛṣis knew that their powers were intended to be used in the service of others.

The powers of the seers of old were achieved by persistent practice. As discipline, even in the East, slowly declined, those towering ṛṣis seemed to vanish. Their stories appear to have no more relevance, as it is inconceivable to the modern person that anyone could have such an awesome memory and such intense concentration.

*Mantras* are words of power and include sacred Texts like the Vedas and Upanisads, formulations in praise of aspects of the Divine. On a basic level the Mantra is used as an incantation similar to those of some Christian churches. At a higher level, when it has become Mantra Yoga, the Mantra is practiced

*The ṛṣis:  
Power of  
mind*

*Powers: result  
of practice*

*Mantras:  
words of  
power*

for single-pointedness of mind. On a still higher level it activates and amplifies latent forces which are within every human being and which then can be termed Cosmic Forces.

To speak these words or sounds of power is to acquire the power in them and to come in contact with the source of sound and thought, the "root" of the Mantra. The ṛṣi or seer who became the receptacle of the Mantra had achieved that state of mind. The sincere aspirant seeks the accomplishments of the ṛṣis and wishes to become such a receptacle also.

*The void*

The empty skull (void) is too awesome for the average being to conceive. The mind resists a vacuum and does its best to fill it with its own creations. So it is a constant battle to keep the mind still, in its natural state of calm (pure mind). Finally, when the mental processes have exhausted themselves through the chanting of a Mantra, the mind becomes open to very subtle intuitive perceptions. At a certain point, it would not be an exaggeration to say that some of these perceptions are emanations from a source that is outside the human mind. Where and what this source is cannot be determined to the satisfaction of those who seek proof for everything. The source of a creative genius of the nature of a ṛṣi, a Johann Sebastian Bach or a Leonardo da Vinci cannot as yet be established by scientific means.

*Guidance of a  
ṛṣi or seer*

Just as on a particular level there can be a meeting of like minds, it would not be unreasonable to contemplate that one can come in contact with that vortex of Energy that was at some time in a physical body, a ṛṣi or seer, who would help, guide, and sustain the devotee to be persistent in the practice of Mantra.<sup>3</sup>

## Speech: Exercises

Speech is man's most constant expression, his greatest performance, and the barometer of his emotions. Between the cry for help and the cry of joy there is a whole range of sounds expressing minute degrees of emotion. The foremost tool for self-expression is the human voice. Control of speech is a necessity and the practice itself is of great significance because of restlessness and the tendency of most of us to indulge in talking, using words either with or without sense. The urge to talk may originate from the fear of silence or loneliness, or the pride of wanting to show off what one knows, or the need to put in one's "two-cents worth." Even giving advice can be more a case of a desire for self-expression than concern for the one who is seeking help.

*Speech:  
barometer of  
emotions*

Awareness of speech is essential in order to discover these urges.

*Ring or coin  
to control  
talking*

—Keep a ring or small coin in your mouth to give just enough time to ask yourself *why* you need to say something and *what* it is you want to say, since the coin has to be tucked under the tongue or in the cheek before you can say anything.

Talking can be evidence of the desire to be noticed, or to defend your actions. Fear can be the motivation for the need to talk, perhaps to quiet the still, small voice within. "I don't have to listen if I keep on talking." The manifestation of the human voice can be a curse as well as a blessing. What is behind your urge to keep talking?

- self-justification?
- killing time?
- self-importance?
- so that you won't have to listen . . . to others, to your inner Self?
- desire to talk about yourself?

*Investigate  
your urge to  
talk*



—mistaken belief that you are sharing, when you are really only trying to collect pity from others?

Notice how you use terms connected with speech and the organs of speech:

—double-tongued, tongue-tied, getting your teeth into something, being in the grip of the need for self-expression through talking, opening up lanes of communication . . . Add your own.

*Tone of voice* <sup>G</sup>

The tone of voice can express a whole range of emotions—joy, happiness, laughter, doubt, irony, arrogance. A quiet, low voice makes everybody listen. (This is a trick often used by politicians when they want to be heard.)

*Difficulty in self-expression*

Difficulties in self-expression may be caused by shyness (Why is one shy? Is it perhaps the reflection of an inverted ego?), or the result of speaking before thinking. (Students often remark, "I don't know what I am going to say until I hear myself saying it." It might be necessary to find out what is behind such a remark.)

*Silence (mauna)* <sup>L</sup>

It is advisable to practice silence (mauna). Mahatma Gandhi has set a wonderful example by observing silence on a particular day for certain hours. No one could persuade him to break his mauna. The highest dignitaries had to wait to speak to him. Mahatma Gandhi knew the significance of the control of speech for himself and the reflection of this on others. The aspirant must choose a time when the temptation to talk is greatest. The continuous need to express oneself has no validity in the life of an aspirant. All urges must come under control and all excuses must be dropped. The hours, the length of time, must be determined beforehand to enforce discipline and a record kept of the results.

*Refined speech is song, sung in glorification of a Power greater than one's own.*

## Thoughts on Smell

Each Cakra controls one of the five senses. The Mūlādhāra Cakra controls smell. In many people this sense is quite undeveloped, while in others it is very keen. There are, of course, various degrees in between.

The three and a half coils representing the Kuṇḍalinī Energy are divided into sattva—purity; rajas—activity or passion; and tamas—inertia or darkness. A person whose sense of smell is little developed has not paid enough attention to its function. Lack of concern can be called inertia or laziness. But, with even a little thought, it is obvious that the sense of smell is very important. For example, it tells when food has become rotten. It also recognizes by the aroma of good food cooking when a delicious meal is about to be served.

Very often the attraction to the opposite sex takes place on the level of physical smell. The eyes may not be satisfied with what they see or the ears may not be pleased with what they hear, but smell might attract because it has a very strong connection to the powerful sexual instinct. The physical smell of some people (not only from lack of cleanliness) can create difficulties for one sensitive in this area, when it is necessary to share limited space.

Rajasic and tamasic experiences in smell are not clearly separated. The sense of smell affects an individual differently at different times.

Padre Pio, a Franciscan monk of Italy, who was one of the few men bearing all five stigmata (marks of Jesus) on his body, had the ability of bilocation (being in two places at once). His presence was recognized by his disciples through the smell of roses and violets. There have been hundreds of such reports from Catholics and non-Catholics alike. Devotees of Lord Śiva have experienced His presence by a very

*Levels of  
development*

*Connection  
to sex*

*Sattvic level:  
experience of a  
Divine  
Presence*

delicate fragrance of sandalwood. Often a group of people who pray and meditate together can, at the moment of having transcended personality aspects, experience some very beautiful scents. These may not seem to belong to any particular flower, but those present will experience, through their sensitivity of smell, an elevated state. To some there may be a distinct feeling or knowing of Divine Presence.

## Smell: Exercises

*I smell. The act of smelling. What is smelled?*

### *Observation exercises*

Become familiar with the difference in the smell of each fruit, each vegetable. Do not just smell food as being good or bad. Observe how much smell stimulates you in eating or drinking. Does coffee really taste as good as it smells? Can you think of a drink or a food that smells terrible but tastes wonderful, besides ripe cheese? In the reverse, what smells good but tastes terrible?

### *Smell of food*

### *Smell of the body*

Check your own body at different times of the day to observe different smells. Discover the difference between the smell of the body and the smell of the breath by breathing into your hands. Also smell your clothes when you take them off. When you use creams, ointments, eau de colognes, or perfumes, find out if they blend with your natural body odor. The body will give off different smells if you change your diet or if you fast. Most people give off a terrible odor when fasting. Your own breath can tell you if there is an oncoming illness. Increase your time for breathing exercises to help the body deal with and overcome the problem.

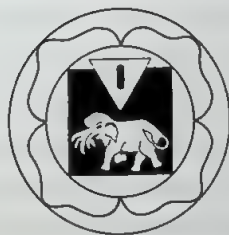
### *Identification exercises*

Blindfold your eyes and have someone arrange a number of different items for you to identify by smell. The objects must not, of course, be seen, touched or tasted. Record your guesses on a tape recorder



and include them in your exercise book for future reference in checking development. With a little practice one is able to name or describe accurately what is smelled.

The sattvic state of the sense of smell is achieved at a further stage of development when all senses are refined and when the mind has been given proper spiritual food.



# Thoughts on Sex

*The Energy is  
neutral*

The Energy of this Cakra is neutral and therefore mankind has a great responsibility to choose how it will be used. In its most powerful form, the Energy is expressed by sex. Aspirants must clarify in their own minds the meaning of sex and understand on how many levels and in how many ways this most powerful Energy can be expressed in human life.

*Manifesta-  
tions: physical  
mental  
spiritual*

Most of the manifestations of this Energy are expressed on the physical and mental levels, while the spiritual level is almost totally neglected. One must now lay a good foundation in one's life. In order to come to the basics, one has to decide what kind of person one wants to be. Often the spiritual path is attempted simply for the enchantment of its differences from ordinary life, its mystical aspects, or powers to be gained. But in the same way that one does not become a Johann Sebastian Bach without laying a solid foundation in the law of harmony, in the practice of playing an instrument, in the development of acute hearing, so one cannot become a Yogi or Yoginī without such groundwork.

*Laying the  
foundation*

So what kind of an aspirant does one want to be? There have to be some clear definitions about the physical level. The basic desire is to have a good healthy body and Haṭha Yoga exercises contribute to this. Proper food is necessary that will nourish the body instead of being used to indulge the emotions or for compensation. If there is a good foundation, in other words, good discipline and self-restraint, at the more advanced level of exercises there will be no problem.

*Standards*

Because of the over-emphasis on sex in modern life, particularly in the West, it is important to give consideration to certain of its aspects. All the questions that one poses to oneself should be expressed in the first person. One must take responsibility for one's

viewpoints and standards. Whatever the viewpoints of any individual, there must be no double standards—one standard for oneself and another for everyone else. ("Do as I say, not as I do.") This is destructive because double standards undermine one's security and result in inner conflicts. It is necessary in the beginning of the yogic Path to lay down very carefully the foundation of one's life. Here is a list that must be completed with great care. The aspirant should begin a process of questioning about sex.

Is sex a biological function over which you have no control and power, and thereby must simply obey the dark instincts of nature? Is sex meant only for procreation since, in the normal course of events, pregnancy follows? What about birth and death? Because birth is only one side of the pair of opposites, death has to be looked at also. Take time to think about birth and death, which are bound up with each other, and responsibility for the sex act will take on a new dimension.

With this in mind, now look at marriage. Is it just a custom, a kind of social institution? What part does sex play in your own marriage? We are not concerned with the views of anybody but the aspirant. Some very soul-searching questions have to be asked. Why did you marry the person you did? What were the reasons? What were your hopes and expectations at the beginning and what are they now? As an illustration, were the reasons for marriage physical attraction, leaving home, feeling important in a new social status, good looks, money? Did you think of a partner for life, someone you could trust, someone with character who could be truly a companion? All these viewpoints will reflect in the sexual relationship. If there is disappointment, sex will be used for punishment and reward. If there is indulgence in self-pity, sex will be used for compensation. If there have been no ideals at the start, there will be no quality in the relationship. Is divorce a solution to problems? Perhaps it is only

*What does sex  
mean to you?*

*Views on  
marriage*



a delay. Karma will follow you into other lives to come. A lesson not learned in this life will still wait in another.

*Bisexuality  
Homo-  
sexuality*

From a yogic point of view, self-mastery, control of basic instincts, is needed to become a fully developed human being. For one seeking higher values in life, a new aspect of love is brought into the relationship between two people. A person with bisexual tendencies is on a teeter-totter, while homosexuality can be a lack of proper adjustment when changing sex in a new incarnation. Sex without the love aspect is only following instincts, however pleasurable they may be. The great significance of the exchange of Energy between two persons is seldom understood. A possible new dimension is only grasped by a full investigation of the purpose of sex.

*The Energy is  
precious*

That most precious Energy that is able to bring another human being into this life must not be scattered senselessly and uselessly. Those who defend sex for pleasure do not realize the consequences on different levels. Children born "by accident" or to be a material asset to their parents, and who are not wanted for themselves, grow up without the dignity and love that is the right of every human being. In the same way that one has to know man-made law, so it is man's responsibility to study Divine Law. Ignorance is no protection.

For loving parents, even a few steps on the Path of Yoga will be of benefit and they may become Gurus for their children. They can know the Divine Law because of their own practice and study.

*Spiritual  
marriage*

There is the possibility of a truly spiritual marriage between two people who are highly developed and close to the same level. In such a spiritual marriage sex would be neither demand nor duty, but communication with a true understanding of love.

There are too many people who seem to be in love with "the idea of love." Does this mean that they are capable of truly loving and truly giving? All

the good intentions may be there, but, as in any stage of development, it is easy to deceive oneself. Awareness is the vital ingredient for all personal development.

It is quite possible that on a higher level, in a spiritual realm, people could be soul mates. The idea of twin souls appeared early in man's history, but how easily can one be mistaken? Is it perhaps an excuse to do what one wants to do?

*Soul mates*

To strive for the Most High and yet have a family and all the responsibility that goes with it is, for the average person, almost impossible. Even in other aspects of life, in careers of men and women, it has been shown that it is barely possible to handle both jobs with equal attention and quality. If in a marriage one partner is wholly dedicated to a career and does not pay attention to the family, the marriage suffers from the neglect of that partner. If there are children then they also suffer. The marriage may even break up. However, some great Yogis are known to have been married. In such cases, the one partner gladly becomes the "servant" of the other, considering it a blessing to have a companion who pursues the spiritual path.

*The seeker  
and the  
family*

Sex being one of the most powerful life energies, a clear understanding is essential. Independent of the course or the attitude that an individual takes toward sex, and independent of the level to which the sexual relationship can be elevated, the fact remains that sex is the beginning of birth. Sex is, in its basic function, bonding. The aspirant should consider what it means to take steps to avoid the resulting birth. In spite of efforts to avoid the consequences of sexual involvement, babies are born, unwanted by-products of some pleasure. There is little dignity, self-assurance or self-worth for the individual who comes into the world in this way.

*Sex: a powerful  
life energy*

What is born, must die. Therefore, sex, birth, and death are a unit that cannot be separated.

## Making a List: An Illustration

### *Pain*

What is meant by making a list? As an example of how this should be done we will look at the word "pain." The making of lists helps in clarification. The lists presented in this material are only a small beginning to help you get started on your own.

#### *Pain*

Pain is a great teacher. This is an old saying which bears truth in all ages. But what is pain? How many different kinds of pain can one experience? The Yogis claim that all pain is self-created. How can we understand this? As the word "pain" is investigated, its meaning clarified by making a list and jotting down what comes to mind, a sort of brainstorming if you like, many ideas will come to the surface. Sometimes they are conflicting, sometimes unrelated.

#### *Clarification of the word*

Let us make a list for clarification. Here is a little help:

Pain . . . physical . . . emotional . . . being humiliated . . . pain in pleasure . . . painfully low self-image . . . pain of being a martyr . . . of breaking away . . . attachment to pain . . . conflicting emotions . . . insecurity . . . guilt . . . being unforgiving . . . death . . . birth . . . etc.

#### *Power of words*

This is only an indication of how to clarify the meaning of words, their use and the ideas attached to them, to understand their *power*.

#### *Investigation*

In the case of physical pain, wait before you take a "painkiller" so that you can know the limits of your endurance. Do not enjoy pain; you do not want to become a martyr or masochist. (Those devia-



tions have no place on the spiritual path.) In some instances the dividing line is a very fine one.

In the case of emotional pain, try to "enter" the pain, as you would enter delight. Experience the pain as deeply as possible. Then let go!

After having written down everything that comes to mind about pain, we can again consider the statement of the Yogis that pain is self-created.

Now keep on asking yourself questions:

- Did my friend really hurt me? . . . want to hurt me?
- Why do I feel so hurt?
- What are the repercussions of being let down?
- Are my plans upset?
- Do I have a strong attachment to my plans?
- Do I dislike having to change any type of plans?
- Maybe I am only "inconvenienced." Am I?
- If this is the case, where is the hurt?
- Maybe I am not hurt, but angry about being inconvenienced?
- Can I hold my emotions back in the future, just long enough to recognize the difference between being really hurt and just being inconvenienced?
- Can I "learn" from my "mistakes," let them fade into the past?
- Will they fade if I keep my emotional response "alive"?
- Does this mean to *discriminate*? . . . Yes, it does!

How much imagined pain do you carry around with you? *Recall.*

How much of your energy is locked up in it? Can you forget and forgive if you keep old (maybe imagined) hurts alive? That energy could be used more beneficially.

# Sex

## *Making a list*

Nature maintains itself in two ways. Plants, animals, and humans search for food to survive. They all have sex impulses to propagate, which keeps the species alive. Both these powerful driving forces are strongly expressed in human life. Here we deal with sex in a particular way. The making of a list will help to clarify the yogic point of view as it is expressed elsewhere.

*Sex: its  
meaning*

What does sex mean to me?

—Is it a biological functioning?

—Is sex for procreation?

—In how many forms is sex practiced? . . . monogamy, polygamy, bisexuality, homosexuality . . .

—How do I use sex? as enjoyment? for pleasure? to have children? for compensation? as punishment, or as a reward? as free sex without any bondage or responsibility?

—Sex outside marriage — is it sin?

—Is sin a cultural thing? Is it my upbringing? Is it a Christian concept? Where does sin come in with regard to sex?

—If sex is love, why so many conflicts? Why is bad language connected with it? Why the rejecting or barely accepting of the fruit of that love, children? Is love excluded from sex? Can it be included?

—Is sex an exchange of energy? Is it psychic power of some sort?

—Is a marriage spiritual without sex, or can sex be included?

—Is there such a thing as soul mates? How does one know?

—What is a mystical marriage? Is it mystical only when sex is excluded?

—Why do some people think celibacy is important?

- What do I think about celibacy? Would the human race not die out if all were celibates?<sup>24</sup>
- Is Cosmic Consciousness only for celibates (brahmacāris)?
  - Is it a matter of attachment, responsibility?
  - Is sex the Kuṇḍalinī force? What is Kuṇḍalinī?





## Thoughts on Death

*Sex, birth,  
and death are  
a unit*

The great effort to avoid birth is matched by equally strenuous efforts to avoid death. We are afraid to die. Why? What does death mean, our own, our loved ones? The Yogi or Yoginī recognizes sex, birth, and death as one unit. The aspirant needs to clarify these personal thoughts in order to determine the goal for this life.

*Ponder the  
meaning of  
life and death*

It is not necessary to spend the nights in a cemetery and to sit on a corpse to ponder the meaning of life and death, as described in some of the traditional Yoga books that are now reaching the West. But it is very definitely necessary to ponder these great mysteries of human life. How else can ideals, ethics, standards, be established for oneself? The evolutionary process goes on regardless of ignorance. Suffering can be minimized by knowledge first obtained, then put into practice. Practicing what one thinks makes life worth living and gives it new meaning.

*Knowing the  
time of death*

The time of one's physical death may be known beforehand, by intuition or through dreams, or as a voice in meditation. If all affairs are in order, the last will made, harmony with all those left behind, death has little anxiety. For the Yogi or Yoginī it is passing into another realm of existence. Consciousness has many expressions and is not entirely dependent on a physical body. But a physical form will be assumed again, so long as there is an intense desire that is still unfulfilled.

*Divine Light  
Invocation*

A spiritual practice called the Divine Light Invocation, which is described in this Cakra, is one of the spiritual activities that will make a distinct difference at the time of death. The term "passing into the LIGHT" is most descriptive. When an individual has passed on into the Light, there will then be a favorable rebirth.

The sex-birth-death chain of cause and effect can be traced everywhere, in every aspect of life. To foresee or anticipate the effect is one of the methods used by some Yogis to practice awareness, to avoid repeating mistakes. One mistake could be to have an unfavorable rebirth. Strong desires can hasten rebirth and an anxious person will accept "anything," just to get onto the train of life to keep fulfilling those very desires.

*Birth and death*

*Cause and effect*

Into what circumstances does one want to be born? *The Bhagavad Gita* says that one could be born into the family of Yogis. If we refer to the four 25-year stages of Āśrama, the first two are given to learning and duty (family, children), the third is learning under the guidance of a Guru, and the fourth stage is to become a Guru. Times have drastically changed (few people now live for a hundred years) and, while the "spirit" of the Teachings must be kept alive, their application has to be adapted to the circumstances of present day life.

*Circumstances of rebirth*

Biological ideas about evolution have their place in their own setting. The Yogi sees the individual path of evolution as a parent would see the child grow into physical and mental maturity. The Yogi does not limit the process of growth, but is keen to develop many potentials and rise above limitations.

*Evolution*

## Death and Deadly Games

### *Making a list*

Death has many aspects. It is most important for the aspirant to examine all thoughts on death. To help with making a list it might prove useful to look first outside oneself at what is happening in the world. Everywhere there is food for thought. Consider, for example, the tremendous efforts that medi-

*Aspects of death*

cal science is making to preserve life from the baby in the incubator to the old man on his deathbed. Why? In contrast to preserving life, there is the effort to prevent life, of which the "pill" is the common example. What do YOU think about the pill and its ramifications? Any newspaper one picks up today is filled with deaths, some as a result of natural disasters, but many are lives sacrificed to greed and power. How does this fit into YOUR ideas of life and death?

*Deadly language games*

Death, which you are investigating, is not only physical. There are many ways to die and administer death. It might be good to start first to look at the many *deadly games* that we play. Let us begin with one of the most obvious—language. Here are a few examples. Add your own:

- I would die if . . .
- I could kill him/her because . . .
- I could kill myself for having done . . .

Then think of the deadly emotions expressed by:

- I hate that color . . .
- I hate to eat that stuff . . .
- I loathe doing this work . . .

*Replacements*

Stop being careless in the choice of words. The power of words is such that we are indeed playing *deadly games* when we casually use such words. Find replacements for these needless exaggerations. Say what you really mean. Instead of "I would rather *die* than do such-and-such," say, "I would rather not do it." You don't *hate* that color, but you do have a preference for another.

Ask: "Do I want to *kill* that person?" Or—"Do I want to *kill* the frustrations I feel because I am unable to deal with a difficult individual?" And if you say: "I could kill myself," look and clarify what it is in you that you really want to kill.



When you control your emotions, do you "kill" love?  
 —Or is it only the habitual reactions and possessiveness that are gone?  
 —Perhaps, by this very control, love is now *really* alive?

*Love and emotions*

Do you have a soul?  
 —Is your soul/Self alive or dead?  
 —Or undiscovered yet?

*Your soul/Self*

Philosophical ideas of death need to be investigated also and not used as excuses for deadly games. Ideas may be sustained because of a strong emotional investment, powerful enough to bypass the most important point: that one must accept responsibility for the actual consequences when such ideas materialize. The *reality* of any philosophical idea has to be searched carefully.

*Philosophical ideas*

Ask yourself: What is real?

Competition and violence are links in the chain connected to killing physically and non-physically. In competition for power, riots or revolutions may take place, resulting in the killing of innocent people. In competing for a business position, a man may "kill" the reputation of his competitor.

*Competition  
Violence  
Killing*

Ask yourself:  
 How many ways can one kill?  
 —body, joy, peace, protest, business, reputation, opposition, laws, expectations, hopes, honesty, ambition, innocence, good-will . . .

*Think about killing*

What part is played by the power of the mind?  
 —imagination, emotion, personal will, awareness of consequences, responsibility, escape, projection of oneself, self-importance, revenge, hate . . .

What is the emotional pitch of a killer?

—Has the killer reached the culmination of all emotion?

—What is the emotional state of the victim?

Sacrifice, martyrdom, and suicide have many roots. As mentioned earlier, the choice of language used gives hints of what is in the recesses of the mind. Assassinations often have their roots in a sick kind of self-glorification. A person may begin by indulging in self-pity and be led by stages to become an assassin, believing himself to be striking a blow against injustice or cruelty. Vanity, self-importance, and imagination may also play a part.

*Thoughts:  
weeds or  
flowers*

Some thoughts are like weeds, running wild in the mind. Some thoughts are flowers, turning to the Light.

—Which are growing in your mental garden?

—Which do you want to grow?

—What roots have to be pulled out? have to be *killed*?

*Ruthless  
weeding*

The garden-mind has to be cultivated with great care. Undesirable characteristics must be weeded out *ruthlessly* before the good is lost and another round of birth and life has to start again.

A great talent, a genius, does not appear suddenly, but comes into existence by careful cultivation, training, and discipline through many lifetimes. The same Law of Karma applies to all the negative and destructive characteristics, if these have been allowed to develop in previous incarnations. The choice is the responsibility of each individual.

*The dark side*

Why must we spend time looking at this ugly side of life when the Goal is just the opposite? The Yogis of old thought that there would be no appreciation for the bright sun if the night were not accepted also. By turning away and pretending the ugliness does not exist, there will be very little effort to make the earth a place of peace and harmony. It is all too

easy to postpone the work on oneself until tomorrow. "In the next life I will do it. This time let me have fun."

—What fun?

—Can you have fun at no cost to anyone?

These are the questions that have to be asked, regardless of one's level. Everything has a small beginning but can grow out of all proportion. However, many undesirable characteristics can be nipped in the bud if searching questions are asked.

*Small  
beginnings*

Finally:

—How well do you know yourself?

—What is your regard for life?

## Competition

### *Making a list*

*In the practice of Yoga there is no competition. You start where you are.*

Ask yourself:

—What does the word "competition" mean to me?

—Do I compete?

—In what areas do I compete? on the job? with my husband or wife? with my father? with a colleague? with a co-student or co-worker? . . .

—For what do I compete? For love? acceptance? to win? because of habit? because I was trained that way? because everybody does? because it is the only way to live? for survival, recognition, fame, self-glorification, self-importance? . . .

These are serious questions and must be fully examined. *To carry competition into the spiritual Path is a disaster.*

*Where and  
how do you  
compete?*



*Yoga  
demands  
discipline*

Yoga makes great demands of discipline. Any type of work that is worth doing must be done well, with perseverance and sincerity, and not for the purpose of competing. In following spiritual instructions, keeping a daily diary, chanting or reciting Mantras for many hours, the level of performance must be maintained. Dabbling in spiritual practice is a deadly game because it creates karma.

## Mechanicalness

### *Making a list*

*Physical  
Mental  
Emotional*

You may not have discovered how mechanical you are. Maybe in the context of Yoga practice it does not even make sense. An illustration will help. After you learned to drive a car, you no longer went through the entire process of driving. You could drive "automatically." In daily life there are many examples of this. But all areas in which one is mechanically functioning, whether physically, mentally or emotionally, have to be slowly discovered. One must become aware of them.

Ask yourself:

- What does the word "mechanical" mean to me?
- What do I do mechanically?

Go through the routine of the day. Think of actions such as driving, eating at particular times, sleeping a certain number of hours . . .

What are my emotional mechanical reactions?

- I always get angry when . . .
- I always get a headache when . . .
- I'm always afraid in the dark . . .
- I cannot be alone, automatically I am afraid to be in my own company.

What are my mental mechanical reactions?

—My mind always gets restless if I am not busy . . .

—My mind always drifts off when things get rough or boring, when I am not the center of attention.

—My mind is always too tired to concentrate.

## Love

### *Making a list*

To investigate love, you begin where you are right now by jotting down your thoughts. If thoughts don't come, ask questions such as:

What is love?

—companionship, being needed, being accepted, being married, having children, emotions, responsibility, self-gratification, helping someone, loving nature (trees, flowers, animals do not talk back)? . . .

*Write your  
thoughts on  
love*

The list is endless and you may continue it on your own. After your list is completed, at least for the moment, ask yourself if you can answer what love is. Perhaps you are in love with the idea of love. This is more common than is generally suspected because of lack of thinking on a deeper level.

When you say "I love you," what exactly do you mean? I love you because:

—you accept me

—you are so friendly, nice

—you take care of me

—you are very entertaining, lots of fun

—you are rich, educated, good-looking

—you offer me security, social status . . .

*"I love you  
because. . ."*

Try to eliminate all the becauses. Having done so, you may feel more honest, almost relieved, and be more modest in your statement, saying instead, "I

*Love with no  
because*

like you (very much)." If you like a person for various reasons, you are being truthful and there is nothing wrong with this. But the word "love" has, in many a person's mind, a very clear definition with many expectations attached to it. When these are not fulfilled the result is disappointment and pain. If you really take a good look at *love* and how you understand it in contrast to its true meaning, your conclusions might be something like "If I love . . . I can forgive . . . I can forget . . . I can refrain from making demands on my loved one . . . I can accept what is . . . I can renounce praise and drop expectations. This love is my sole happiness."

There is one more question left: "Which of my senses experiences love?"

## Consciousness—Mind

### *Making a list*

If you find it difficult to make a list on the subject of consciousness and mind, try some of the others first. You can, however, begin this one in the same way by just trying to find out how you *use* these words. When do you speak of "consciousness" and when do you prefer "mind"?

*Clarify your  
use of these  
words*

- How do I use "consciousness"?
- How do I use "mind"?
- Do I use these words interchangeably?
- If I interchange them, when and why?
- What are the characteristics of the mind?  
thinking, memorizing, concentrating, observing,  
daydreaming, learning, imagining, procrastinat-  
ing . . .
- Are there levels of mind? How many?
- What do I mean by each level?



- What about telepathy, clairvoyance, inspiration, intuition? Do I credit mind or consciousness?
- Where does mechanicalness come in?
- Higher Self versus lower self—what does it mean to me?
- ESP, hypnosis, self-suggestion, projection, analysis . . .

Once you understand even a little better the mysteries and functions of your mind, you will become aware that it has an awesome power.

MIND IS THE INTERPRETER  
OF ALL EXPERIENCES.<sup>5</sup>



# Divine Light Invocation

It is important to learn to relax, but also to create tension at will, in order to understand both functions. The exercises given below are a preparation for the practice of the Divine Light Invocation.

## *Stage one*

1. Stand erect. Tense the feet as hard as you can. Feel every degree of the tension. Repeat this several times, until you develop an awareness of how each degree of tension and relaxation feels.
2. Let the arms hang loose. Tense the hands slowly. Allow the tension to rise up the arms. Let them both slowly relax. Notice how the tension spreads to other parts of the arms. When you tense the hands, spread the fingers apart. Repeat this several times until you again develop an awareness of all the degrees of tension and relaxation. Be aware of the first moment of tension.
3. Coordinate the tension and relaxation of the hands and feet. Tense them together and relax them together. Repeat this until it becomes easy. Try to prevent any reflection of this tension to other parts of the body; keep all parts of the body relaxed except where tension is specifically requested.
4. Beginning with the hands, extend the tension to your forearms. Let relaxation follow after each tensing, in the same order in which you tensed, i.e., relax hands first, forearms next. Repeat the previous step with the feet and calves. Coordinate the tensing of the hands and forearms with the tensing of the feet and calves. Tense . . . relax. Tense . . . relax.
5. Starting from the hands, extend the tension first into the forearms, then on into the upper arms. Slowly relax. Repeat the previous step with the feet, calves, and thighs. Coordinate the tensing of the hands, forearms, and upper arms with the tensing of the feet, calves, and thighs. Gently relax.
6. Tense the hands, forearms, upper arms, and now the shoulders as well. Gently relax. Tense the feet, calves, thighs, and buttocks. Relax—always in the same order in which you tensed, i.e., feet, calves, thighs, and lastly buttocks. Coordinate hands, forearms,

upper arms, and shoulders with feet, calves, thighs, and buttocks. Tense and relax.

7. Tense just the abdomen. Relax. Tense the neck. Relax. Coordinate the successive tensing of the feet, calves, thighs, buttocks, and abdomen with that of the hands, forearms, upper arms, shoulders, and neck. Slowly tense and slowly relax in the same order. Repeat this coordinated tensing and relaxing until it becomes easy:

1. Hands/feet
2. Forearms/calves
3. Upper arms/thighs
4. Shoulders/buttocks
5. Neck/abdomen

Make sure that your face and head remain relaxed at all times during these exercises.

### *Stage two*

Now incorporate controlled breathing into the exercises.

As you tense—inhale.

Hold the tension—retain the breath.

As you relax—exhale.

This can be mastered in several stages. As you inhale, tense from the hands and feet. Hold the breath and the tension, then exhale and relax at the same time. Go through all of the exercises until you have mastered the coordination of tensing—inhaling, holding the tension—holding the breath, and exhaling—relaxing. Increase holding the breath in gradual stages. There should never be any strain or pressure felt in the body.

### *Stage three*

Inhale and tense the whole body smoothly. Do not over-strain. Retain the breath and tension only for as long as it feels comfortable. Relax and exhale slowly, experiencing clearly each degree of tension and relaxation.

After you have thoroughly practiced these exercises, you are ready for the actual Divine Light Invocation.



Stand erect, feet shoulder-width apart. Lift the arms above the head at the same time as you smoothly and gradually tense the whole body. The arms should be kept straight and the tension maintained at all times throughout the body. Hold the tension and breath. Keep the eyes closed and focus them on the space between the eyebrows. Make the following affirmation to yourself, with all the concentration possible:

I AM CREATED BY DIVINE LIGHT  
I AM SUSTAINED BY DIVINE LIGHT  
I AM PROTECTED BY DIVINE LIGHT  
I AM SURROUNDED BY DIVINE LIGHT  
I AM EVER GROWING INTO DIVINE LIGHT

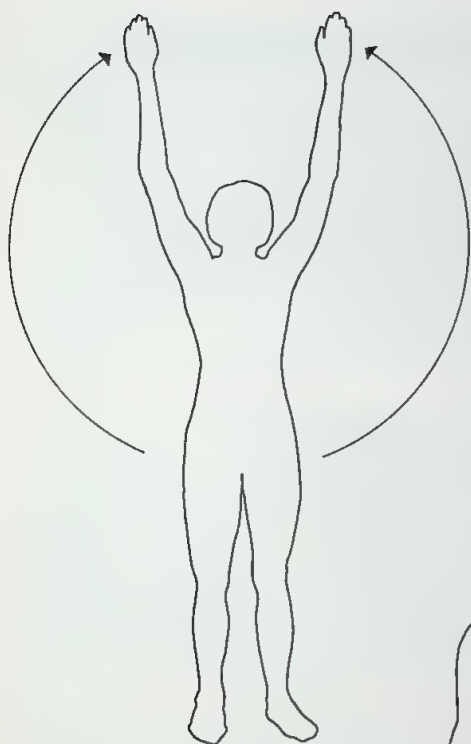
Use the imagination to *see* yourself standing in a shower of brilliant white Light. See the Light pouring down upon you, into the body through the top of the head, filling your entire being. Then lower the arms slowly. Now, without raising the arms, keeping them at your sides: tense the body and inhale. Hold the tension and the breath. Mentally repeat the Invocation. Slowly exhale and relax.

During the second repetition, with the arms beside the body, concentrate on *feeling* a warm glow of Light suffuse your entire body, outside as well as inside. Acknowledge silently to yourself:

*"Every cell of this, my physical body, is filled with Divine Light; every level of consciousness is illumined with Divine Light. The Divine Light penetrates every single cell of my being, every level of consciousness. I have become a channel of pure Light. I am One with the Light."*

The Divine Light Invocation is an exercise of will, as well as an act of surrender. Be receptive to the Light and accept that you are now a channel of Divine Light. Express your gratitude with deep feeling. Have the desire to share this gift with someone whom you wish to help. Turn your palms forward.

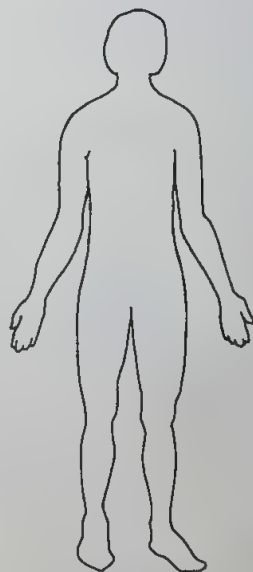
You can now share the Divine Light with any friend or relative. See him or her standing before you. Mentally open the doors of your heart and let the Light stream forth towards the feet of this



1. *"Stand erect, feet shoulder-width apart. Lift the arms above the head . . ."*



2. *"Now, without raising the arms, keeping them at your sides . . ."*



3. *"Mentally open the doors of your heart . . ."*

person. The Light encircles the body, spiralling upwards in a clockwise direction, enveloping the body completely. See the spiral moving high up into the sky, taking his or her image along with it. Finally the person merges into the source of the Light and becomes one with the Light. You may even lift your head to follow the spiral of Light, keeping the eyes closed. When the person has passed from your view, relax and silently give thanks for having the opportunity to help someone in need. Remember, in helping others we are helping ourselves.

Whenever your concentration weakens repeat the exercises.

The Divine Light Invocation may be used as a Mantra also. Repeat the words of the Invocation to yourself and see yourself surrounded by Divine Light in your daily life. It will help you to keep in touch with the Light within you and to see the Light in others around you.

Before you go to sleep each night, see your body and bed surrounded by a spiral (like a cocoon) of Divine Light. In this way your physical body, which is the temple of the soul/Self, will be protected.

The Divine Light Invocation has to be meaningful; never allow it to become an automatic routine. When water runs through a rusty pipe the water comes through, but there is much else that is unwanted. In the same way that the water running through the rusty pipe will finally clean it out, so through your efforts you become more spiritual, a purer channel for the Light. As you keep practicing, the channel will become more clear.





## Perception and Use of Neutral Energy

*I am created by Divine Light*  
*I am sustained by Divine Light*  
*I am protected by Divine Light*  
*I am surrounded by Divine Light*  
*I am ever growing into Divine Light*

Each aspirant has to clarify two words that are very important, POWER and ENERGY, as to their meaning and their use. A very good way to expand on the meaning and use of these two words is to think how power and energy are used, and think of this in terms of oneself.

A further step is to use a Mantra and test its power. Personal experience can verify what has been stated in this book. The possible use of power becomes clear. The practice of the Mantra of the Light alone will increase the power of concentration, something that is very beneficial in everyone's life. Success in all walks of life is the result of power of concentration. Without mental discipline, concentration will remain poor. Desire to achieve good concentration can be stimulated and sustained by choosing a particular method. The Mantra of the Light is very suitable to increase concentration because it puts the practitioner into contact with Energy in a symbolic way. That will help the understanding that Energy is not only neutral, but also a tool in the hands of the user, who decides how it is going to manifest and with what repercussion—negative or beneficial. So far the Energy is basically used in sex and meant for the continuation of the species. The next step is in creative expression. With greater awareness it becomes obvious that the Energy can be channelled or used differently, particularly by the use of the power of the imagination, as we will see in the next Cakra, the Svādhiṣṭhāna.



## Dance is Yoga . . . Yoga is Dance

The first glimpse of the dance comes to us from Lord Śīva Himself. Śīva, the Yogi of Yogis. He shows us the Cosmic Dance and portrays to us the unity of Being. He demonstrates that the highest being is in the complete oneness of soul and body and that this can be attained through dance. That is why dance is called Yoga, not merely physical acrobatics, but Yoga as a means of achieving unity in consciousness.

The Supreme Life dances. From Him vibrates the essence of all sound, of all movement, holding within itself the potency of all expression. To the accompaniment of the music of thunder Śīva dances. The Cosmic Rhythm of His Dance draws around Him the ensouled matter which differentiates into the variety of this infinite and beautiful universe.

Śrī Kṛṣṇa, the Lord, the Paramātmā, dances in Brindaban and the Gopīs dance around Him in the Rāsa which is called the Kṛṣṇalīlā. In the Rhythm of the Dance, the Paramātmā draws to Himself the Jīvas that have separated from Him. In the Rhythm of the Dance each Gopī discovers Lord Kṛṣṇa for herself. The Jīva knows once again the supreme Fount of Life from which originated all that is manifest. This is the origin of dance and the originator is Bharata, the great sage. This great ṛṣi communicated the Dance of the Lord in very subtle ways understandable only to those who had refined all their sense perceptions. This is not for ordinary human beings to comprehend.

The dance, then, is an expression of the Unmanifest (avyakta) and the Manifest (vyakta). It is the Spirit of Eternity. Life is flow, is motion, is the interaction of puruṣa and prakṛti, a manifestation of the evolution of movement. Here movement is truly creative, the highest expression of the human body. It is the rhythm of the mighty spirit of the Divine. Therefore, it is possible for each mortal to follow the footsteps of the Gods—each according to the measure of understanding and, yet, each sharing in the Divine Bliss (ānanda). The dance itself does not evolve through the effort of human beings, but through Divine inspiration from above.

The body is the spiritual tool to express the Most High. Love and devotion form the basics from which each individual proceeds.

The portrayal of the finest emotions in the movement of the body are, then, truly love and devotion. In this process of refinement, Divine Grace descends. For without these qualities, the inner chord cannot vibrate in those who witness this most beautiful expression.

Art is the supreme expression of mortals and with it goes a responsibility to all fellow men. In the highest form of art the spiritual genius flowers. With this borne in mind and heart, it is easy to understand that constant refinement will benefit all of any community. Not all situations are appropriate for representation on the stage, or for the view of everyone at all times. When the genius flowers, the few who will have the privilege to be present and inspired will be lifted to great heights, desiring to attain such a state of Bliss also.



*"In the Rhythm of the Dance each Gopī discovers Lord Kṛṣṇa for herself."*



*In the Svādhiṣṭhāna of yours I praise Him  
as Saṃvarta forever happy in the form of fire,  
O mother and also Samaya, the great one.  
When His glance filled with great anger con-  
sumes the worlds, it is Her glance dripping  
with compassion that makes this cool (sooth-  
ing) service.*

MANTRA FOR THE SVĀDHIṢṬHĀNA CAKRA

## Chapter Five

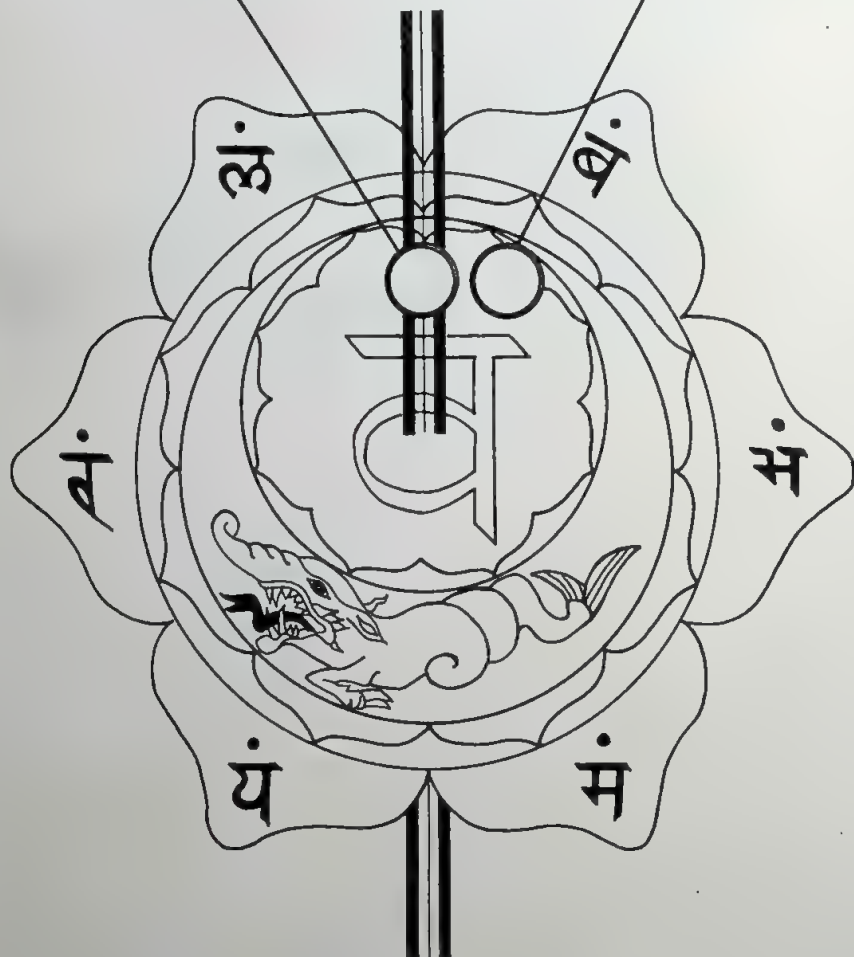


*Svādhiṣṭhāna*

The Second Cakra

GOD: Viṣṇu

GODDESS: Śakti Rākinī



Svādhiṣṭhāna Cakra



# Svādhiṣṭhāna

## The Second Cakra and its Symbols

SVĀDHIṢṬHĀNA: The Second Cakra or Lotus.

TATTVA: Differentiating faculty.

52 RAYS: Relate to water (āp).

RASA—Taste: The Second Cakra controls this sense.

SIX Lotus Petals: The Lotus is sacred.

COLOR of the Petals: Vermilion. The color of this Lotus indicates impulses, imagination, ideas, which are stimulating to the mind.

THE LETTERS on the Petals: BAṢ—BHAM—MAM—YAM—RAM—LAM. Language increases.

LOTUS within the Lotus: Called the Kunda flower.

AMBHOJA MAṆḌALA—Crescent Moon: It is luminous, white, cool, and negative (receptive, inactive), representing water.

MAKARA: Looks like a combination of an alligator and a fish. Its wide open mouth swallows up everything without discrimination. This Cakra governs imagination which creates desire leading to gratification, particularly of pleasure.

BĪJA—Seed Sound: VAM.

PINGALĀ: The Nāḍī on the right side of the body.

ĪDĀ: The Nāḍī on the left side of the body.

SUṢUMNĀ: The central channel in the spine.

CITRINĪ: Three in one (sattva, rajas, tamas). Body, mind, and speech.

GOD: Viṣṇu: The male aspect of Energy unmanifest. Brahmā with Vanamālā (Hari Viṣṇu).



The intelligence on this level is symbolized by Viṣṇu, the Preserver, the second aspect of the Hindu Trinity (the two others are Brahmā, the Creator, and Śiva, the Destroyer). The aspect of preservation is extremely important to human life.

The mind expresses itself through the physical vehicle of the brain. All actions are carried out through the physical body. The body is the seat of the five senses. This particular Cakra deals with taste. It is also the seat of the imagination. It is through mental and physical activity that karma is created, and the healthy and proper functioning of mind and senses is necessary to overcome karma.

The mālā is called the Vanamālā because it is made of forest flowers and it extends down to the knees, as a garland of flowers of all seasons. The Vanamālā is also called the celestial garland. The use of the mālā is the same as explained in the Mūlādhāra Cakra.

## OBJECTS:

### *Śaṅkha—Conch Shell:*

Listening to the conch shell and hearing the sound are only possible if one keeps silence. This type of listening demands attention. The soft sound of the conch shell must not be drowned out by the talkative activity in the mind. For most aspirants who begin to practice Yoga it will be necessary to practice listening to different sounds such as bells and music

in the beginning. Later this must be extended to listening carefully and with attention to another person. The aspirant must also learn to *hear* what is said. See the exercises at the end of the chapter.

*Cakra—Disc:*

When the disc is thrown at a target the aim must be true so that it hits the center. Controlled movements of the body and perfect attention are necessary. The disc symbolizes the mind; concentration has to be achieved. See concentration exercises at the end of the chapter.

*Gadā—Mace or War Club:*

This is an object with which to kill or to subdue. The many personality aspects and their egos need to be subdued. See exercises at the end of the chapter.

*Padma—Lotus:*

The Lotus is symbolic of sacredness, of the spiritual goal. The Lotus floats on the surface of the water of the mind and yet it is connected to the bulb from which it grew, which is rooted in the mud. These two different aspects of the Lotus are expressed in the double Lotus or Kunda flower. One is below and one is above the surface of the water.

The spiritual Goal is open to all, be they of high birth or of humble origin in life. The Divine spark is within each, but the degree of awareness of it varies. Effort must be made to see that Divine spark in all encounters with others.

GODDESS: Śakti Rākinī: The female aspect of Energy manifest.



The intelligence on this level is symbolized by Śakti Rākinī.

The Goddess, being the creative aspect, is of blue color. Her three eyes are red and Her teeth protrude, giving Her a fierce appearance. This symbolic picture tells the



aspirant that uncontrolled and uncultivated imagination is, indeed, a great danger. To be in the grip (protruding teeth) of this powerful aspect of the mind can make one lose one's mind. See chapter on imagination.

## OBJECTS:

### *Śūla—Trident:*

A trident is a stick which is divided into three parts on the top. This indicates the oneness of body, mind, and speech. Observation has to be exercised to become aware of the interplay of forces among body, mind, and speech, while the stick represents the spine in which Kuṇḍalinī is active.

### *Padma—Lotus:*

The sacredness of the Lotus is expressed in the mudrā of the hand or in the Padmāsana of Haṭha Yoga, and in the thousand petalled Lotus on top of the head. The guiding thought of the Lotus as a symbol is towards purity of the mind because the Lotus flower, while growing in muddy waters, is not stained. In the same way, the Self, while undergoing various experiences, is uncontaminated.

### *Ḍamaru—Drum:*

The vibrations of the drum are the easiest to recognize in the body as they stir up emotions and sexual feelings. The repetition of a rhythm stimulates responses in the body which can cover a wide range of emotions. All such responses have to be controlled and refined.

The drum is also a symbol of the time element. It takes a certain length of time before a person hears the drum, or until a whole group hears the drum, depending on the distance and the loudness. The aspirant is advised to be extremely careful because resistance to temptation can be worn down. Continuous exposure to words and to temptations makes it a matter of time until the physical body will respond to the rhythm and be stimulated into desires that have not been intentionally anticipated.

We must also consider that the drum is symbolic for the continuous hum in the head, the mind ever-active, the mental talk. Remember that we can talk ourselves into and out of anything. It is very important to be aware of this and use this ability to our advantage.

However, a good drummer can be a virtuoso and demonstrate that this ancient instrument is able to produce inspirational sounds and vibrations.

*Ṭaṇka—Battle-Axe:*

The battle-axe is symbolic for the uphill battle of life. In *The Bhagavad Gita* Lord Kṛṣṇa enticed Arjuna to fight. Daily life is a constant battle. Instincts, mechanical reactions, impulses, false pride, false modesty, selfishness, self-importance, self-pity—all these negative characteristics the aspirant has to fight and balance with positive characteristics in order to overcome their destructive and painful influence. Life can then take on greater quality—depth, peace, joy, and harmony.



## The Goddess of Speech— Śakti

*Increased  
refinement*

The Devī of Speech symbolizes the first level of self-expression and here in the Svādhiṣṭhāna or Second Cakra increased refinement is already coupled with greater awareness. Awareness, when seen as a characteristic of consciousness (rising) expanding to other levels of understanding, makes the idea of hierarchy of these levels more easily comprehensible. In “higher expression” language moves to a level where even the meanings of words are expanded and words are used to express meanings that cannot be defined. A term like *manasic level* is then not accurately interpreted as *mental level*, nor *Mantra* as *prayer*. The *Language of the Gods* as contrasted to “ordinary language” has to be penetrated by happy listening—intuitive listening.

*Intuitive  
perception*

*Meditation  
and trance*

The same degree of intuitive perception has to be developed in listening as in speaking. This means listening within. When one listens, all mental talk has to cease and this is the state reached in true meditation. This is not to be confused with what we in the West term a state of trance, into which it is possible to slip at a certain stage of intense concentration. In meditation the mind is meant to be absolutely alert, even while it is occupied with something else. It is like a lover sitting on a bench in the park reading a book and understanding what is read, but at the same time having an inner alertness for the arrival of the beloved because the beloved is expected to come. The listening is somehow intuitively tuned in to recognizing the footsteps or the rustling of clothes, something that will announce the presence of the beloved. Immediately this is heard, the lover who waits is alert and ready to receive the beloved.

In the trance state, however, the alertness is



not there and the person in trance does not perceive what the person in the true meditative state does. The lover can be so absorbed in the book that the beloved can stand in front and not be noticed. When the suggestion is given to recite or chant a Mantra (it can be said that this is cultured speech and a way to cultivate the voice), it is not meant to be a trigger into a state of trance. This little illustration is a method by which the unexplainable can be grasped. It indicates that the meaning of each word is stepped up to a much higher level than that which the word has in "ordinary" speech. It is up to the aspirant to cultivate perception and then to express it in a more refined way. This process should never really stop. As the intuition develops it becomes the source of extraordinary awareness. For instance, in the beginning of musical training we learn the rhythm of a song by counting. Not so on the Path of Yoga. Intuitive listening is necessary to perceive the rhythm and to tune in to the Teachings or to the Guru. It is not a blind following, it is a slow perceiving and understanding of the why and how. When it is blind acceptance, development is so slow as to be imperceptible.

*Intuitive perception of the Teachings*

Every Guru or teacher has disciples who have greater limitations than others. But it is only a question of time, patience, and persistence for them to expand beyond their limitations and to become more aware and perceptive. The Path is open to everyone. Only pride, the ego, greediness, and self-importance prevent the aspirant from listening intuitively. Therefore the will must be applied and a clear decision made to put all else aside so that there is nothing left but full attention, listening with intuition, and surrender. When the interplay of forces between intuition and awareness has developed, listening ability will increase. The aspirant then stands on firm ground. From this direct personal experience, knowledge is gained.

*The Path is open to everyone*

Sound and its resonance are inseparable and occur in ordinary speech or song. They can give birth

*Sound and resonance*

to powerful emotional responses. The average person misses on the very subtle level the power of sound and its resonance. The gross is not a receptacle of the subtle.

Because of man's habit of naming a thing and thereby assuming that he knows something about it, we find in all cultures that God has uncountable names. Each name has an inherent power because the name was created by the desire to make an immeasurable Energy personal, to make it meaningful. The practicing Yogi or Yoginī tries to pull all these names together into one sound, OM, which then takes on a specific characteristic and is called Prāṇava. The personified name gives contact on a personal level with the Divine.

*Personal contact with the Divine*

## Speech: Exercises

*Conch shell*

The conch shell (Śaṅkha) comes from the sea (water). When put to the ear, its sound comes in steady soft waves. Listening to the conch shell is like listening to the still, small voice within. The mind must be still to be able to hear this soft sound/voice. The mental background noises of the mind are produced by the emotional waves arising from uncultivated or selfish imagination.

*Message of the conch shell*

This symbol tells the aspirant what action must be taken in order to hear this soft sound. If you have an opportunity to pick up a conch shell and to listen to it, you will observe many important details in this process:

—intent, expectation, hearing something delicate, maybe even holding the breath or making a gesture with the hand saying "silence please," or assuming a certain bodily position.

A sentence expresses the meaning of words, conveys the message. A word by itself is a symbol of one or several ideas. As in Mantras, a combination of words put together, or a single but very long word, can give a complete message. It is not usually recognized that behind each word there is a range of ideas and that the listener has the freedom of choice to pick the most acceptable.

*Sentences,  
words, and  
ideas*

The word is the pronouncing of a thought, making thought audible. Sometimes the thought may be away in the distance and slowly come into focus by pronouncing it.

*The word:  
pronouncing  
a thought*

Ask yourself:

- Where do thoughts come from?
- What is that invisible source that provides the power to manifest sound in speech?
- What happens when the spoken word becomes the written?

A spoken word can condemn a man to death or save a life.

Ask yourself:

- How is this power used in my own life?
- What actually happens when a word is spoken?
- What are the mechanics?
- What part does breath play?
- How does different breathing affect the brain?
- What is the difference in a word spoken audibly from one spoken silently in the mind?

*Investigate the  
power of a  
word*

The ability to speak necessitates the action of the tongue. The tongue is also the organ of taste. How do we use the term "tongue" in our everyday language?

*The organ of  
taste reflected  
in speech*

- to be tongue-tied, double-tongued . . .



—to have a tongue as sharp as a razor, to give a tongue-lashing . . .

—tongue in cheek, to speak with a forked tongue . . .

Consider how they apply to your own self-image and then continue the list.

### *Water and imagination*

Water is symbolic for imagination. The power of imagination, the ability to arrange and rearrange images of an abstract and a concrete nature, is an extraordinary skill. Thinking of how they may apply to the imagination, consider these commonly used sayings about water:

### *Sayings about water*

—water under the bridge, don't make such big waves, cross the great water, you can lead a horse to water but you can't make it drink . . .

Add your own.

### *Sacred Lotus*

As the Lotus is sacred, the increase in the number of petals indicates an increase of expression, not only in words but, even more, in imagination. How, then, is this greater ability of expression used? The aspirant should look at every action, thought or word from the point of view of sattva (purity), rajas (passion), and tamas (inertia) in order to further cultivate speech. The best course is to remain cool, calm, and receptive with emotions controlled (not suppressed), since in the heat of emotions expression can be dangerous. Strong emotions and indulgence are often linked with taste (eating habits). The urgent need for control is indicated by the Makara, with its greedy open mouth.



## Thoughts on Taste

The Svādhiṣṭhāna or Second Cakra controls the sense of taste. Although there can be no clear distinction, because all human characteristics are interwoven, in the course of self-development there is a gradual refinement and escalation of the senses from the tamasic to the rajasic to the sattvic level. The senses can be compared to the keyboard of a piano. High and low keys are played in skillful harmony. This is the objective.

In regard to food and drink it is the tongue that we taste with, yet in daily language it becomes apparent that taste is also related to other areas besides the liking for certain foods and delicacies. The cultivation of taste in food leads to the ability to really taste a carrot or a pea by itself, without the addition of spices. There is the cultivating of taste in dress and decoration, and in the arts. The word "taste" is also used to indicate discrimination in manners, speech, and behavior. The display of good taste seems to give an individual a certain charm which opens the doors of friendship and is an advantage in various work situations. The appreciation of art is, in part, cultivation of good taste, to which a sense of beauty also belongs.

*Taste and  
discrimination*

The awareness of a particular sense becomes more acute by isolating it and by recognizing the interplay of forces which would not be understood unless attention were directed in this way. When greater awareness of the function of taste is achieved, its constant stimulation by a chain of reactions will be understood, particularly "feeding" the imagination and "feeding" the mind.

*Awareness*

There is a saying, "We are what we eat." Let us pause to think about this. Does our choice of food point to certain characteristics of indulgence? What does it indicate about our mental and emotional make-

up? Taste for something is created and recreated by memory. The actual need (for food, sex) may not exist, but memory of some pleasant experience creates the desire to re-experience. Other motivations might reinforce this, such as rewarding oneself.

*Sattvic*  
*Rajasic*  
*Tamasic*

Until the sense of taste is refined to the sattvic level we cannot experience the purity, or sattvic quality, of food. The Prāṇa in food is sattvic if there is no influence from taste stimuli. Fasting gives you an opportunity to understand how the stimulations to the sense of taste affect its purity, making it rajasic or tamasic. During a fast observe the effects of the imagination and investigate any problems that arise. Dreams should be watched during fasting. Do they contain food, and which ones? Dreams may indicate that certain foods are not good for us.

*Fasting and dreams*

*Taste and imagination*

Taste has to be seen in a broader sense by understanding the connection between taste and imagination. Indulgence by any one of the senses is like swimming in murky water of unfathomable depth, with no shores in sight, no hope of reaching firm ground. Once the taste of imagination has been experienced the temptations are difficult to resist.

Many important decisions in life have been made (marriage, business) based on unrealistic expectations—imagination kindled by desire.

*Spontaneity*

Does this process of investigation exclude spontaneity? Not at all, as long as we discriminate between indulgence and spontaneity. No sense should be killed or dulled, but rather refined to the utmost degree.





## Taste: Exercises

*I taste. The act of tasting. What is tasted?*

The exercises on taste begin with food. For the average person the sense of taste has been dulled and so spices are used to increase taste, create more stimulation to the tongue, and thereby promote appetite. In these exercises nothing is used that could mask the taste. They are done blindfolded so there will be no interference from another powerful sense—sight.

*Begin with  
food*

Place a piece of food such as finely grated carrot or a single pea on the tongue and experience the sensations. They are quite different from, for example, those of a few grains of sugar, a little bit of milk or chocolate. Notice the urge to bite or chew, and to swallow. It is not easy to resist in the beginning and points to greediness. The exercise should be done on a full stomach; then later, using the same ingredients, on an empty stomach.

*Experience in-  
dividual foods*

Food and beverages (including water) allow endless possibilities for investigating the sense of taste and make the aspirant aware of areas that have been given little or no attention. When sufficient exercises have been done blindfolded, they should also be done with the eyes open to recognize how much stimulation comes from sight. Interaction with the sense of smell should not be ignored. Every small detail is important in the exercise and should be carefully observed and noted.

*Interaction  
with sight  
and smell*

- How does the food or drink smell?
- Is smell important?
- Or is taste?

*Food and  
emotional  
stimulation*

The taste of food creates a great stimulation to the emotions and vice versa. The law of thought association brings past images into the mind. Food can mean:

- socializing, under the disguise of sharing
- obtaining recognition and acceptance for exquisite cooking and special recipes
- reaction to self-pity by eating
- rewarding oneself

Think about:

- Is one born with a certain sense of taste or is this sense developed?
- Is taste a source of continuous desires?
- What part does gratification or emotional satisfaction play?
- What is the grip that taste has?
- What compulsions, leading to indulgence, are connected with taste?
- After the initial experience of taste, does greed take control?

*Goddess  
Rākinī:  
greediness*

The Goddess Rākinī shows protruding teeth which means being in the grip of greediness in regard to taste. Once an attempt is made to answer these questions on a personal basis, many more questions will come up leading to insights about one's sense of taste. The finer things like wine, caviar, or other delicacies should not be overlooked. This poses a very interesting question—the refinement of taste of the tongue in comparison to taste on a higher level, disassociated from the tongue.

*Actual taste*

The following lists may help to stimulate your thinking and understanding of the sense of taste:

- indulgence, likes—delight
- aversion, dislikes—abhorrence
- indifference—neutral
- hot food and drink
- cold food and drink

- spicy food and drink
- alcohol

Make a list of likes and dislikes. How strong are they? Bringing them into balance makes them less extreme. From strong uncontrolled likes and dislikes arise such characteristics as: aversion, hatred, conceit, envy, jealousy, possessiveness, arrogance, passion, lust, infatuation, dullness, and laziness. Observation of any of these characteristics does not mean condemnation, but rather identification of them and the slow change towards the opposite of each in order to achieve a balance. Any tendency to be judgmental would just add another undesirable quality. The daily diary can be seen as a mirror in which events are recorded and which allows development in the practice of awareness to be observed. This is very encouraging and should be looked on as a reward for effort.

*Likes and dislikes*

Cultivation can begin by developing “taste” for the more beneficial attitudes and actions in life:

- having good taste in appearance, clothing, furniture
- having good taste in arts
- handling a delicate situation in good taste

*Cultivation of taste*

Taste as related and unrelated to the taste buds:

- being left with bitterness
- the affair that soured
- speech as sweet as honey
- a sweet person
- the taste of Divine nectar and ambrosia

Make a list and try to explain the reasons:

- What is tasteful to you?
- What is distasteful to you?

When these exercises in taste have been done, some should be repeated with the guiding thoughts:

- “I taste. What is the act of tasting? What is tasted?”



*The taste of  
water*

Now answer these questions about water and then add any others you can think of:

- How different can water taste?
- What is the power of water?
- What is in a drop?

Think of:

- standing in the rain and letting the raindrops fall in my mouth.
- tasting the snow or a piece of ice.
- tasting the tears of joy or sorrow.

- Can I drink the ocean? (of Divine Wisdom)
- Have I a thirst for life? or for the spirit of life?

*The organs of  
taste: symbols  
in speech*

Pay attention to tension in the jaws.

- Indicating what?
- Getting one's teeth into something.
- Being in the grip of . . . criticism?—of oneself? of others?
- Being in the grip of . . . sex and emotions?
- Spitting it out (in disgust) . . . bitterness or negative experience.
- Giving somebody a licking.

Swallowing insults and still smiling is a characteristic expressed by the laughing Buddha with the enormous belly. This tells us of the necessity of going beyond praise and blame.

*Spiritual food*

After all these areas are explored, a taste for spiritual food has to be developed. Can this be cultivated? How? Unless taste in a general way is under control, it will not be easy to develop a taste for the Most High.

## Thoughts on Imagination and Desires

The sense connected with the the Svādhiṣṭhāna Cakra is taste. The double Lotus with the Crescent Moon in between indicates water, which is symbolic of imagination, a functioning of the mind. The ever-so-fleeting image brings a possible pleasant or unpleasant taste. The most important exercise is to watch the mind with all its various aspects.

*Water:  
symbol of  
imagination*

Desire is an aspect of the mind that needs careful investigation. How do desires come about? Where do they come from? They are rooted in the Svādhiṣṭhāna Cakra which controls imagination. Many impulses pass through the mind unnoticed. When the imagination gets strong impulses, they are picked up by the mind and grow by the power of imagination into desires. Some are very persistent. Like clay in the potter's hands, while desires are still pliable they can be moulded into any shape or form. But once the final shape is accepted (in the form of opinions, beliefs or concepts) and fired in the kiln of the emotions, they harden and take on a certain permanence.

*Desire  
Imagination  
Emotion*

The scheming to fulfill those desires, and form those concepts and beliefs, is a process with many repercussions. Self-righteousness emerges, viewpoints and beliefs are fanatically defended. How does this happen? It happens by the emphasis on their importance. They provide a certain security. But we fail to realize that this is all due to the imagination and emotions working overtime for the wrong reasons. Here is the birthplace of many problems. The insistence on holding this rigid attitude keeps us asleep. Without awareness we lay our own traps.

*Opinions  
Beliefs  
Concepts*

If this process is recognized it becomes clear that desires have to be very carefully examined by the aspirant. Once the desires (emanating from the

*Manifestation  
of desires*

emotions) have been given power, it may take a long time, even years, for the manifestations to be recognized. An old desire may suddenly bear fruit at a time when the desire itself is already forgotten. We are often like children hankering after a new toy which, when we get it, has little meaning. We have already moved on to wanting something else. We need to realize this process of our development. In this respect daily reflection and a spiritual diary are very helpful tools, enabling us to take stock of the changes and the progress made.

*Unwanted  
desires*

It may be helpful to recall what desires have been schemed for in the past. By a clear decision the energy can be redirected from the old desires, now unwanted, before they manifest, so that the energy is available for new and better ones that are more in keeping with present insights. There is a universal source of all Energy, to which those unwanted desires can be "returned," as it were. In the process of that awareness, other things come up from the past, vague memories of hurts, grudges, resentments that have been left unattended. Old emotions, like old unwanted desires, can similarly be dissolved in the new insights.

It may come as a surprise to discover that even the unfulfilled desires of childhood exert energy and play on the adult. Those deep-seated desires must now be recognized as obsolete and dismissed. They constitute excess baggage and they hinder the spiritual pursuit of the aspirant. What to dispose of and what to keep? Careful discrimination must be applied.

*Renunciation*

The idea of *renouncing* may have to be considered because of some unreasonable or illogical attachments. The concept of renunciation is often thought of as very unpleasant or even difficult, yet *it presents the renunciate with a freedom which, once tasted, demands more.* To be free means neither to possess nor to be possessed. The renunciate is thus placed in the middle of the teeter-totter, in a position of balance, free from



the emotional swings which come with being at the ends. There will always be some desires in an aspirant's life, but it is wise not to form any attachments to them. Many a desire can also benefit others. That must be taken into consideration when forming new desires. Pain and frustration can be avoided by thinking things through: evaluating, anticipating, and exercising foresight in the execution of one's desires.

*Desires can  
benefit others*

While the mind is the battleground of the personality aspects, it is also a playground where day-dreaming can create infinite possibilities. Uncultivated imagination can lead to fear, to hallucinations, to a variety of such unhealthy mental attitudes. But directed imagination leads to creative expression such as inventions and art.

*Imagination:  
cultivated,  
uncultivated*

Fear has to be examined in a very clear-eyed way to see if imagination is its creator. This indulgence of the imagination in the wrong way breeds insecurity. When these emotions are not dealt with, the ego looks for a scapegoat, and one may go through life forever blaming others and defending oneself. At some time the responsibility must be accepted or one will never achieve that much longed-for sense of inner security.

*Fear*

Assessment, effort, work, time, and energy are necessary to recognize the part played by imagination in our lives and to direct it in a positive, creative way.

## Imagination

### *Making a list*

In "Thoughts on Imagination and Desires" there is a reference to the need to cultivate imagination because it is the source of fears. It will be practical now for the aspirant to make a list of all the fears that are experienced. Deep-seated fear is often caused by past mistakes, wrong action, intentional or uninten-

*The source  
of fears*

*Over-stimulated or uncultivated imagination.*

tional, and the attendant fear of discovery. Sometimes they can be due to an over-stimulated imagination, although the majority of fears are caused by an uncultivated imagination. It is up to the aspirant to make the decision to direct imagination in a positive, beneficial way.

*Investigate your imagination*

Here are a few questions you can ask yourself:  
—Do you get dizzy looking down from a great height?  
—Are you afraid of being in a confined space?  
—Are you afraid of crossing a room in front of people?  
—Have you any fear of being rejected?  
—Have you any fear of being discovered?  
—What about fear of inadequacy? in what areas?

*Recognize your fears*

You can extend the list but it is sufficient just to recognize your fears and use your energy to “re-build” yourself. Most fears, when you look at them, are the result of neglecting to cultivate your imagination. Vivid imagination and powerful emotions can be terrifying and follow you into dreams as nightmares. It is not wise to become involved with too much negativity; time and energy should be applied positively.

*Benefits of Divine Light Invocation*

Practice the Divine Light Invocation daily and reflect on the meaning. It is a powerful exercise giving many benefits.

*Images resulting from imagination*

Uncultivated imagination may result in thinking of yourself as:  
—emperor, queen, box office idol . . .  
What roles do you play in your daydreams?

Could uncultivated imagination produce fearful images such as:

—avenger, aggressor, hunter, hunted . . .

Think about the qualities that cultivated imagination will produce:

—consideration, understanding, honesty, openness, loyalty . . .

Speech can be the result of strong emotions which are fed by imagination. As imagination is cultivated and refined the aspirant's speech will reflect this.

*Speech*

## Desires

### *Making a list*

Make a list of desires in order of their importance and priority.

Since desires lead to scheming for their fulfillment, decisions should be made with careful discrimination. The Goddess showing protruding teeth symbolically warns us that the emotions can have their grip even on our reasoning. The power of emotions has to be realized. Their impact must be fully understood so that one can withdraw energy from them. Otherwise the energy goes into the fulfillment and manifestation of the desire. Desires created when one was still in a very immature state have to be dissolved because they become obstacles that hinder one's further development.

*Imagination  
leads to desires*

Visualization is invoking an image or directing imagination. Undirected imagination is only day-dreaming and has no results. Directed imagination must now be used to examine images of people and events still held from the past. Do these images influence you now?

*Visualization*

Think back over your life and list the things you have wished for in the past. List them in order of priority.

*Past desires*



How relevant are they to you today? Do they still exert power over you? Here are a few to start:  
I wanted to:

- become a great pianist
- be a success in business
- wield power over others

Or maybe you wanted to:

- be a perfect wife, mother
- be a perfect husband, father

What *is* perfection in a wife, husband or children?

What is anyone's view of perfection?

When you have listed desires from the past and noted the influence they have exerted on your life, it is not difficult to see the effect of emotions and imagination, and to understand the need to cultivate and direct both.

*Invoking  
an image*

With these lists in mind choose an image which embodies a quality you wish to develop. Bring the image of your choice into focus, concentrating on the symbolic meaning, first to cultivate the imagination and, as a next step, to relate to your life the idea for which the symbol stands.

## Imagination—Visualization: Exercises

In the exercises that follow possible difficulties may arise because of objections to choosing an image of worship in the first place. This is a typical Western attitude. Yet the same individual cares to have pictures of a member of the family, such as his wife or child, on his desk, knowing all along that it is only a piece of paper with the image of a well-known individual on it. So why object to a picture that expresses symbolically an idea of Creation too great for the mind to focus on for prolonged periods of time?<sup>6</sup>

- a) Choose an image that is most pleasing to your mind. Let it be a symbol of all that is for you most Perfect, most High, most Beautiful. Remember what this image stands for: the masculine aspect, Cosmic Energy *unmanifest*.

*The image*

- b) At the spot of the Heart Lotus see the female counterpart now representing Cosmic Energy *manifest* in as much Beauty and Splendor as you can imagine.

The male figure in its symbolic meaning is bigger, because there is so much more Cosmic Energy unmanifest than you can possibly envision.

If you choose Buddha, see the Mother of Mercy sitting in His Heart.

If you choose Kṛṣṇa, see Rādhā sitting in His Heart.

If you choose Śiva, see Pārvatī sitting in His Heart.

If you choose Jesus, see Mother Mary sitting in His Heart.

- c) Now invoke a prayerful attitude and let the emotions express themselves in gratitude. To come in contact with the sacred Teachings should make anyone grateful. In this way the emotions should be included in all spiritual practice, as they thereby become cultivated.

It has already been pointed out how powerful the human mind is and how quickly it can expand in its concentration. Repeat the above exercise, now adding the Invocation of the Divine Light so that all that has been imagined is "seen" as a mass of White Light. The visualization of the Light will in due time saturate all forms that have been imagined. This process gives the mind enough substance in the beginning to keep

*Invocation of  
the Divine  
Light*

it occupied over a long period of time. Through the Invocation of the White Light the aspirant is slowly helped to recognize the Energy that manifests in so many forms.

Exercise:

*Filling your  
body with  
Light*

- 1) Sit in a meditation posture, cross-legged, or with your ankles crossed. Rest your hands, palms up, on your lap. (As an alternate posture, you may stand.)
- 2) Focus your eyes on the space between the eyebrows.
- 3) Try to think of yourself without the body or face; in other words, avoid the familiar reflection seen in the mirror.
- 4) Visualize your body as empty or hollow like a glass bottle.
- 5) See a small stream of White Light (the size of a thread) flowing down the center of this glass form, filling the feet, legs, trunk, arms, neck, and head.
- 6) Soon you cannot distinguish detailed limbs. This form that you call your body is now a mass of Light.
- 7) Hold this image (a mass of Light in the shape of your body) as long as possible. Repeat often until it becomes familiar.

Before continuing check all notes that have been written down after practice. Any feelings other than peaceful or harmonious ones are a signal to stop all exercises immediately. The aspirant can only resume exercises when there is an increased feeling of well-being physically and emotionally. Anything out of the ordinary indicates that personal guidance is definitely needed.

*Need for  
personal  
guidance*

*Cultivate per-  
sistence and  
patience*

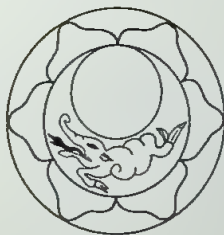
Do not SKIP any exercise. Learn to be persistent. There is more to learn in each one than meets the eye at first glance. Patience is hardly anybody's natural virtue and hence has to be cultivated.

It becomes quite obvious that great care and



time have to be spent on the "laying of the foundation" as given in the First Lotus. It is very important to be able to follow instructions. When there are difficulties, the obstacles should be searched for in the ego which is asserting its intellectual power and expressing an unfounded pride. The antidote to pride is surrender and humility.

*Difficulties  
arise from  
pride*



## Thoughts on Self-Image and Personality Aspects

*Thoughts  
have wings*

The aspect of preservation (Viṣṇu) being together with the Garuḍa Bird tells the aspirant that thoughts have wings. Where do you want to fly? Powerful thoughts can carry you to beauty, inspiration, and blessing, or to destruction of yourself and others. That is your choice. Where does the power for these thoughts come from? We can see the manifestation, but what is the source?

*Self-image  
Imagination*

A negative or poor self-image is very common. The reasons for it do not really matter since this knowledge, while it may remove the sting, does not alter the perception one has of oneself. The way to change self-image is by a systematic process which will help in cultivating the imagination. Through this process it will become apparent how great the power of imagination is. The poor self-image can be eradicated by sincere practice of the Divine Light Invocation which has been explained in the Mūlādhāra Cakra.

*Divine Light  
Invocation*

*"Image-  
creation"*

When investigating the power of "image-creation," it is necessary to clearly understand various processes that take place without the aspirant becoming aware of them. Do not allow anyone to reduce you to an image on which you then act. Your awareness must also be clear enough to prevent you from doing this to anyone else. Such a reduction is a great insult to the dignity of a human being. But there is also the *dangerous possibility of indulging in a sort of narcissism*, where nobody counts but the inflated ego that nourishes a hidden self-pity by such reduction of others.

*Thought  
associations*

Making thought associations by images, our habitual reactions because of past experiences, also affects the self-image. This can be a bad habit, so mechanical that it escapes attention.

The images that come up in daydreaming must be examined as they are often the source of fear and insecurity which play a great part in self-image.

*Daydreaming*

Everyone has many different personalities which move like actors into the foreground in various situations. The multitude of personality aspects is, in yogic symbolism, the covering dust of the glorious Self. In Western psychology it is often referred to as "role playing." The idea is basically the same. The difference lies in the choice of symbolic expression. Many illustrations show ritual dancers wearing masks and sometimes exchanging masks. These performances often serve as a kind of entertainment or festival for various seasons and, at the same time, are meant to teach the audience some serious and important truths. Spiritual dances have the same purpose, even though the ideas may be on a higher level. They have a subtle influence on the minds and emotions of the audience, and may awaken the individual to refinement of the senses.

*Personality aspects: the covering dust of the Self*

All your personalities and their various aspects need to be recognized. The best way is to make a list and decide on their validity. Some should be discarded. They are like tail ends hanging on from former times and only encourage vanity, pride or false modesty. Others have developed as a means of self-preservation or survival.

*Validity of personality aspects*

Ask yourself what survival means. Write this down too, because the question will come up again. It will be helpful to compare notes and see your progress.

*What does survival mean?*

The list of all those personality aspects will help you to recognize their power and influence on yourself and others. The face of the Śakti Rākinī stands for self-image. You need training to think of yourself without the familiar face that is reflected in water or a modern mirror. You cannot imagine yourself without the face. The protruding teeth of the Śakti Rākinī indicate that being in the grip of rampant emo-

*Śakti Rākinī: self-image*



tions is very destructive. When they are connected with the self-image, it can be devastating. The ego then seeks to compensate and the situation worsens. Dishonesty, pretense, and other negative aspects are expressed to the extent to which the power of the emotions is allowed to manifest.

*Awareness,  
responsibility,  
and control*

As the aspirant becomes aware of the facts and begins to take responsibility and control, changes for the better take place.

*Self-hypnosis*

The repetition of concepts of oneself can often have an influence bordering on self-hypnosis. It will be hard to escape that trap. But it can be done. Remember, the Divine Light Invocation practiced regularly is a powerful tool in improving self-image.

## Self-Image

### *Making a list*

*Recognize the  
need for  
change*

What is your self-image now? The need for change has to be recognized, then something can be done about it.

*Overcoming  
old images*

The image you put out to others is the basis of all responses and treatment that you get back. Even long after one has made changes, responses by others may have become so habitual that the difficulties created by the old image are hard to overcome. It takes good will on the part of others to accept and respond to the changes in you. These new responses will encourage you to keep working on overcoming poor images of the self.

*Clarify your  
self-image*

To help clarify the image you hold of yourself, here are a few questions to be answered:

—How do I see myself?

—Is my self-image valid?

- Am I changing my self-image as I am changing?
- Can I take a new look at myself?
- Are changing goals changing my self-image?
- Can I see myself in the perspective of my new goals?
- Are the energy and discipline expended in pursuing the new goal improving my self-image?
- Am I exercising self-will? (Daily reflection)
- What images of daydreams could prove useful if consistently applied?

This list must also be expanded to provide the aspirant with the basis for making the necessary changes.

## Personality Aspects

### *Making a list*

Making personality changes by sheer will power or suggestion is impossible. The strain would be too great to be sustained for any length of time. But the goal of expanded consciousness provides a replenishing energy. By practicing identification with the Energy (Self) and by having faith in the practice, change is inevitable. (Even on a much lower level, where man is still seeking pleasure, changes take place according to the strength of the desire to achieve happiness.) Finally, the learned experience becomes second nature.

*Personality  
changes*

*Goal of  
expanded  
consciousness*

To begin, it is suggested that the aspirant make a list of personality aspects. These should not be limited to the usual ones of:

*List of person-  
ality aspects*

- father, wife, doctor, businessman, nurse . . . but should also include such characteristics as:
- manipulator, game player, philanthropist, gossip, intellectual . . .

*The Self owns  
no personality  
aspects*

These are just a few random ideas. Make your own list. Clarify yourself to yourself. Avoid all judgment. Remember that there is no personality aspect that is specifically male or female, both have all sorts of characteristics.

Remember also that the Self does not own any of these personalities. Each one has its own ego, making your life more miserable than happy. These manifestations have no permanence. They appear and reappear depending on the emotional stimulus involved, to which the imagination makes its immediate contribution.

A little illustration will help to clarify this further. If you needed your appendix taken out, and the surgeon identified with your pain, his hand would falter and become destructive instead of helpful. By being completely detached, the necessary help can be given, the action (surgery) well performed. The sympathy that is sought is expressed in the action itself. In the same way, the aspirant must avoid identification with the personality aspects in order to perform the necessary action.

The Divine Light Invocation, in due time, helps the aspirant to realize the Divine Self.

## Watching the Mind

Any path of Yoga has the same goal, liberation from all limitations. You have to decide to begin yourself and you have to do the job by yourself. It cannot be done by anybody else. An important part of this work is watching the mind to learn how it functions.

*Concentration  
on an image*

Concentration means to keep one object in the mind without any other intruding thought. The length of time that you can do this is an excellent way to find out more about your mind and its ability to concentrate. This practice is done side by side with



the practice of the *mālā* from the preceding Cakra, reciting a Mantra a certain number of times without any interfering thought. Various images are used to enlarge one's power of concentration. Once you have learned to sit motionless for long periods of time, you can watch your mind and begin to understand the process of thinking. What kind of images appear? The mind is very quick and so an effort has to be made to slow it down. Are the images that appear in your mind concrete or abstract? Neither is right nor wrong, but these findings allow you to decide on the kind of image that is best suited to you for concentration. It will soon become obvious to the aspirant how many acrobatics the mind will perform in order to relate one thing to another. The mind will link the object of concentration to many other things which are associated with it. It will be difficult to bring the mind back to think only about the object. It is important to become aware of the tendency of the mind ever to weave new fabrics. The cultivated imagination can create a genius, but without control it produces the fragmentation that keeps the mind from relating to the object at hand.

*Recitation of  
Mantra*

*The process of  
thinking*

*Concrete and  
abstract  
images*

## Watching the Mind: Exercises

### *Steps to Meditation*

- 1) Select a number of different objects. Concentrate on each one for 3 minutes. It will take practice to achieve unbroken concentration for this length of time. The objects must vary in kind. For example, a piece of wood, glass or bowl of water, a picture of a known person and of an unknown person, a likeable and an ugly one, a picture of a bird, an insect, a fierce animal, a sweet little kitten or puppy.

*Focus*

*Water*

*Wood*

*Pictures*

2) Sit still for 10 minutes watching the mind, then note all that is observed:

- the emerging images
- the thought associations
- distinguishing between concrete and abstract information
- the influence of either concrete or abstract images (basic to meditation)

Then increase the time by 5 minutes—expand to a half hour and finally to an hour. (This can be done in two ways—first, at the start, every 10 minutes until an hour is complete, watch and take notes. However, the exercise must finally lead into watching the mind for an unbroken half or full hour, with notes to follow.) All notes from watching the mind should be compared. If certain aspects repeat, indicating a possible problem, it should be dealt with by continuous questioning.

*Deal with  
problems*

These exercises will, in time, show how the mind works on all sorts of stimuli presented to it and how the mind is being stimulated apparently from nowhere. Watch what happens if, by old habit, you let the stimuli manifest or, by the new discipline of the mind, you “weed” them out as soon as they appear as thoughts. It is like a million seeds so small they are barely visible, all “sprouting” at once. This process occurs so fast that the earnest aspirant can barely distinguish them. But when control has been achieved, those thoughts die quickly and energy can be diverted towards only the desirable ones. This practice takes care of the innate restlessness which prevents focusing on a single thought or object. The mind can now become a container, open and receptive.

*Seeds  
Weeds*

*Restlessness*

*Recall*

Keeping notes makes it possible to practice recall and to check the accuracy of what you recall. The result of this exercise is a strengthening of memory and, more important, the acquiring of a keen sense of discrimination.

Having learned to concentrate, to recall, and to empty the mind, meditation can be attempted because the mind is now like a vessel, able to receive thoughts of a Divine nature. In the beginning there may be insights of great significance, but as soon as intuition begins to unfold the perceptions are of a different quality, which can be designated as Divine. These perceptions flow into the mind and are often preceded by waves of brilliant hues of blue color. The meditating aspirant is enveloped in an all-encompassing feeling of peace and harmony. This by itself will become an important STIMULUS to keep up a regular practice. Soon it will be more than a stimulus; a deep longing will be created within the heart. Instead of color a sense of peace may come.

*Meditation  
now possible*

*Insights*

*Waves of blue  
color*

*Sense of peace*

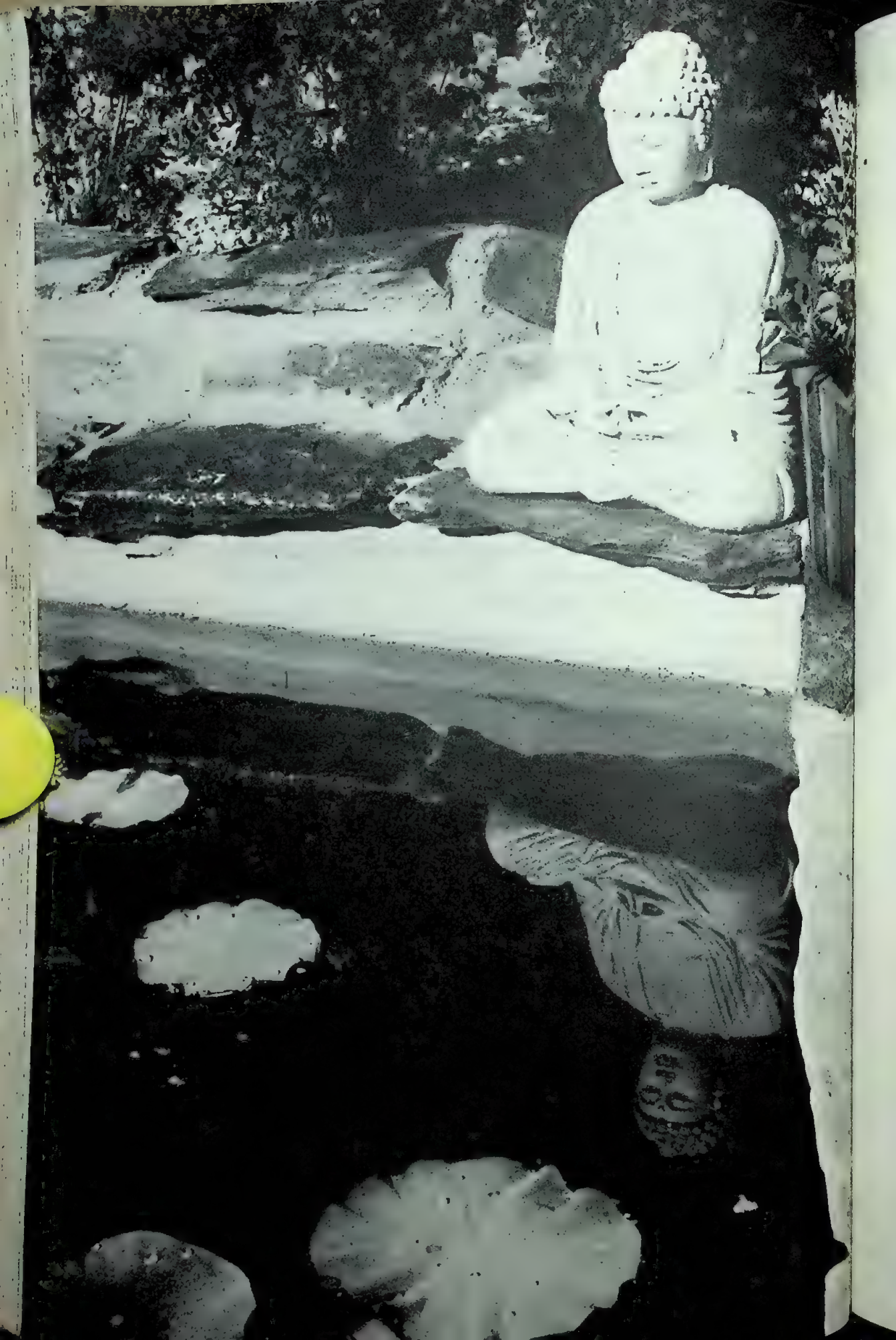
A "Divine Image" is more effective for concentration than an insignificant one. The particular image chosen can be seen in the mind's eye first in an elaborate form, but must pass into its purest form. For example, if Lord Kṛṣṇa is chosen as such an image, all decorations must slowly disappear, the garlands, flowers, and peacock feathers, as these are only symbolic for qualities.

To sum up, *when desires are diminished and the scheming for their fulfillment ceases, meditation is possible without much effort.* The Yogis call this acquiring a PURE MIND.

*A pure mind*







## Reflection on Water

Water can be used as a symbol for the mind, which can flow uncontrolled and destructive, or be directed and beneficial. The *kamandalu*, which is a container, implies the control of water and thus the control of the mind. Therefore, it is advised to watch the mind, looking at the thoughts and images that appear, then reflecting on both the results of the exercises and the day's events. Reasoning must be used to follow one thought to completion and to take action on whatever one has become aware of. There is no room for indulgence in emotions. This requires maturity.

What is the meaning of water? What part does it play in my life?

Water cleans and washes.

Water quenches thirst and fire.

Water is used for cooking—for diluting.

Water has various tastes according to its source and flow.

Water can give pleasure and joy, and excitement (boating).

Water is refreshing on a hot day, offers a cool swim.

Water is important to life—to growth and survival.

Water carries—debris, boats, and ships.

Water can take many shapes and forms, filling spaces.

Water is soft and gentle in small quantities.

Water's large waves can destroy valleys and towns.

Water unchecked is dangerous.

Water's flow can be directed.

Water is unpredictable.

Water responds to the slightest breath.

Water wears down the hardest stone by steady drops.

Water can emerge from below.

Water can come from above as rain, hail or snow.

Water reflects the sky.

Water receives, unresisting, my projections.

What other reflections on water would *you* have? What thought associations come to your mind, now that you have watched your mind and seen its play, its creativity?



Is your mind like the water?  
Does a slight stimulation create ripples of endless thoughts?  
Are the waters of your mind murky?  
Is a lot of debris floating around?  
Can you direct your mind, or is it like unchecked waters, just gushing forth?

The steady dropping of water wears down the hardest rock.  
Can you apply this to yourself in regard to spiritual practice?  
Would you want to?

Still water reflects the sky.  
Can you keep your mind still to reflect Divine thoughts?

The mind is useful in many respects, but not in all. Sometimes it assumes a rulership without proper authority. Who gives this authority? As water can emerge from below, so many suppressed thoughts emerge from below within yourself. Let all that debris come to the surface so that you know what is there. Remove what you don't want. Keep and deal with what you want.

Can you stay above WATER?

By now it must have become obvious to the aspirant that there will be no "definite" directions, only pointers to stimulate thinking into new avenues. All depends on YOU. Remember to keep a daily diary. It will become your treasure chest.

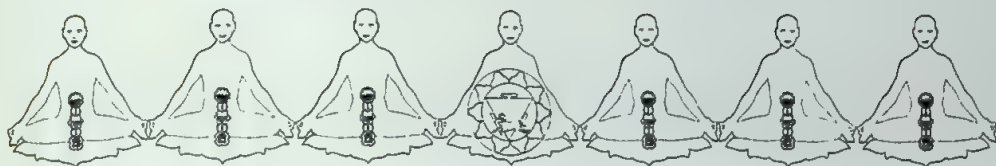




*In the Maṇipūra of yours I serve Him as a dark cloud, which is the only refuge (of the world) raining down the rain on the three worlds scorched by the sun that is Hara. (This cloud which) carries the rainbow, Indra's bow, bedecked with ornaments of various glittering jewels, and which has flashes of lightnings due to His Śakti bursting forth from the enveloping darkness (of the cloud).*

MANTRA FOR THE MAṆIPŪRA CAKRA

## Chapter Six

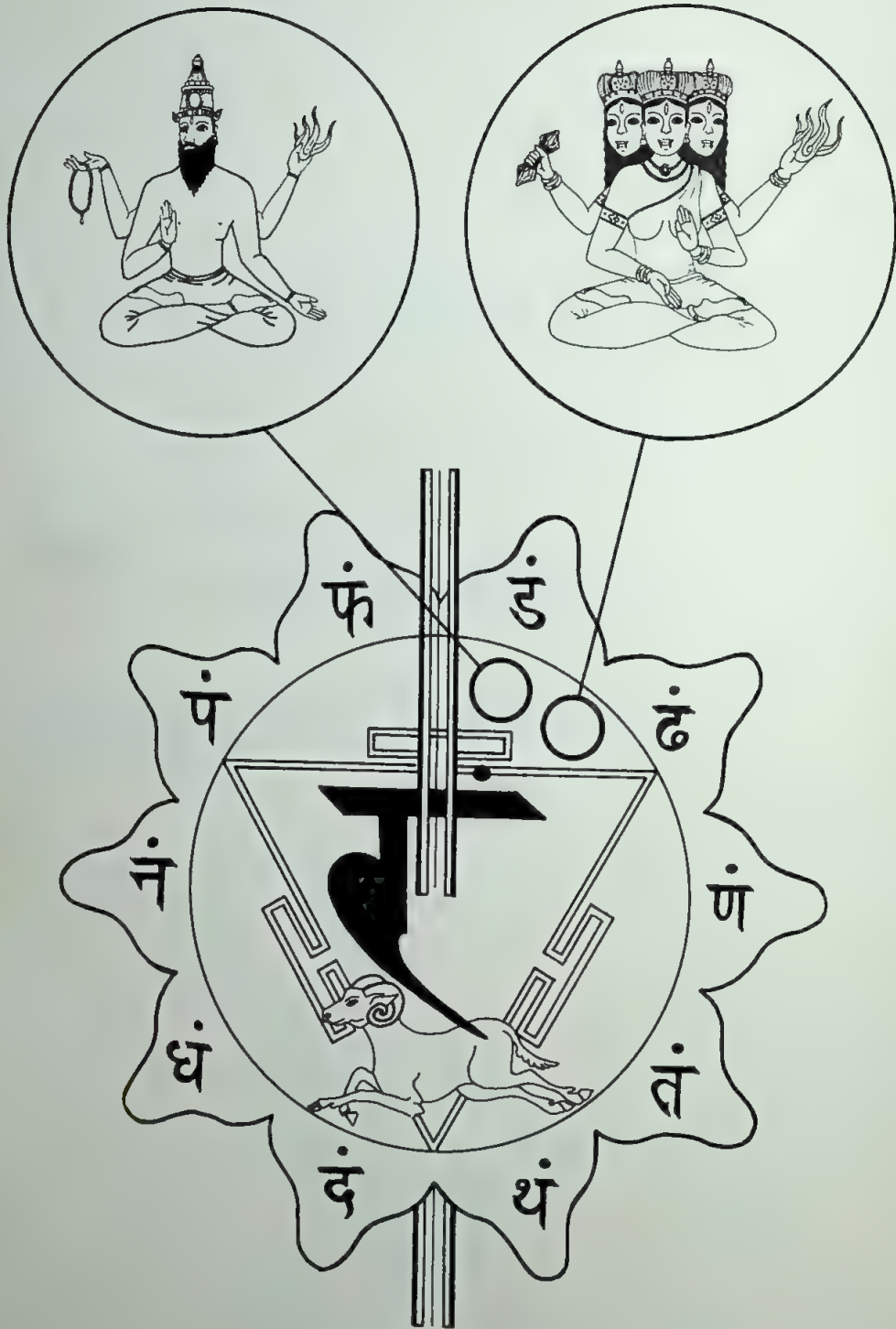


# *Maṇipūra* The Third Cakra



GOD: Viṣṇu

GODDESS: Lākinī



Maṇipūra Cakra

# Maṇipūra

## The Third Cakra and its Symbols

MAṆIPŪRA: The Third Cakra or Lotus.

TATTVA: Differentiating faculty.

62 RAYS: Relate to fire.

AGNI—Sight (emotions): The Maṇipūra Cakra controls this sense.

TEN Lotus Petals: The Lotus is sacred.

COLOR of the Petals: The color of heavy rain clouds. Clouds prevent seeing clearly.

THE LETTERS on the Petals: DAM—DHAM—NAM—TAM—  
THAM—DAM—DHAM—NAM—PAM—PHAM.

AGNI MAṆḌALA—Triangle: Pointing down, with swastika marks on the three sides. Fire wheel. Color: red.

RAM: The animal in this Cakra is a ram representing the persistence of strong emotions which block clear sight.

BĪJA—Seed Sound: RAM.

PINGALĀ: The Nāḍī on the right side of the body.

ĪḌĀ: The Nāḍī on the left side of the body.

SUṢUMNĀ: The central channel of the spine.

CITRINĪ: Three in one (sattva, rajas, tamas). Body, mind, and speech.

GOD: Viṣṇu: The male aspect of Energy unmanifest. Preserver of life (Rudra).



The intelligence on this level is symbolized by Viṣṇu (Rudra), the aspect of powerful emotions.

Man has to preserve the body through which he can raise the Kuṇḍalinī. When all exercises in meditation are completed, the aspirant acquires the power to create worlds. This means the worlds of one's mind, because one now has power over imagination and emotions.

#### OBJECTS:

*Rudrākṣamālā—Rosary:*

Powerful emotions need to be expressed. This can best be done for one's benefit by turning them to the worship of one's Iṣṭadevatā.

*Śakti—Fire Weapon:*

Fire weapon, so called because of the fire of emotions which will manifest and are inherent in the Śakti Power.

*Gesture:* Vara(da)—granting boons.

Abhayamudrā—dispelling fears.

GODDESS: Lākinī (Lakṣmī): The female aspect of Energy manifest.



The intelligence on this level is symbolized by the Goddess Lākinī.

Three faces, three eyes to each face; the face is the seat of all five senses. The third eye is the increased power of inner sight that is available—clairvoyance.



## OBJECTS:

### *Vajra—Thunderbolt:*

The thunderbolt is a symbol of power. It is a very powerful expression of nature which can strike and set afire what it strikes. So the aspirant has to clearly decide if he wants to be set on fire with enthusiasm for success, name, and fame, or wants to be consumed in the fire of seeking the Most High. Again, it does not seem possible to serve two masters or pursue two goals. In this Cakra the fire of passions is strong and powerful, as can be seen in the next object.

### *Śakti—Fire Weapon:*

Having an innate power of destruction.

*Gesture:* Vara(da)—granting boons.

Abhayamudrā—dispelling fears.



# The Goddess of Speech— Śakti

*Compulsive  
behavior*

*"Needs"*

The power of speech that has been given in the previous Cakras can now, in the Maṇipūra, focus on compulsive talking, compulsive criticism, and the compulsive gratification of what are termed "needs." It must be realized that man goes through five stages of development: mineral-man, vegetable-man, animal-man, man-man, god-man. While it is right for man to fulfill needs in the first three groups, man-man, now in search of the Path by a decision of his own, must look at these needs and cut them down to the very essentials. Giving in to needs that should be discarded could exact a high price.

*Language*

*Ideas behind  
a word*

Language is born of the unconscious. The drive to express oneself comes from the unconscious. Behind many a word lies a whole range of ideas allowing numerous interpretations. For example, the words "time" and "space" spring from very different ideas when used by a housewife, an architect, a scientist, a social worker, or a psychiatrist. Each profession has its particular language for specific communication with those of like mind.

*Energy drain:  
in talk, in sex*

Energy wasted in useless chatter is easily recognized when we are sick. We are then aware that energy is quickly depleted. There is a reluctance to conform to the social conventions that decree that one must always make talk, however small or worthless. What is the difference in the useless drain of energy in talk or in sex? If greater awareness of its preciousness does not show a purpose for the energy, then it is spilled down the drain. Observing the mind has to be carried out as an exercise to find out how it functions and to obtain greater awareness.

*Use of words*

Changes in oneself are frequently unnoticed. They come to the foreground, however, when atten-

tion is given to the use of words and language. In each Cakra the Goddess (the Śakti) of Speech increases. Higher levels of consciousness are approached as awareness expands. Exaggerations, superlatives, coarse language have to be left behind as one evolves; after some time these simply drop away. The voice becomes a magnet that attracts others; the magnetism of personality comes into effect.

*Personal  
magnetism*

The scriptures speak of the Devī of Speech. The reason for giving speech a female character is that the letters of the alphabet give birth to language, to words, the sound body. They are sound symbols.

*Female character of speech*

Just as complicated mathematical formulas are unintelligible to the untrained mind, so are higher aspects of the meanings of words like Mantra. A magnetic/electric field is created by the chanting of Mantras. The benefits are evident to those who practice Mantra Yoga. Sound has an effect on the human body in general and, in very specific ways as well, on certain limbs and organs.

*Sound  
Mantra*

First there is the sound or word, second the sense, and last the manifestation (Vāk). This is MANTRA, NĀDA BRAHMAN. The summary of all these ideas is expressed in the DEITY (Vibrations). A Mantra is, therefore, not limited to the letters themselves but is in their audible pronunciation (vibration).

*MANTRA  
NĀDA  
BRAHMAN*

*The DEITY  
(Vibrations)*

## Speech: Exercises

In this Cakra, the Maṇipūra, we will investigate the power of the spoken word and realize that in certain respects the power of language is not different from the power of thought.

*Power of:  
spoken word  
language  
thought*

To begin this investigation think of the following:

- What is speech?
- How do I speak?



Clearly?—mumbling?  
Do I want to be heard?  
Am I afraid to be heard?  
Is there clarity of thought?

After having asked these questions and added many more of your own, the brief answers that you may supply in the first moment of response have to be further clarified.

—Do I see the light of the day?

—If I do, what is it that is seen?

Daylight, sunlight, the moonlight—all have the word “light” attached to them.

*Sight as it reflects in speech*

Many expressions which are commonly used in everyday language show the reflection of sight in speech:

—in my eyes . . . (in my estimation)

—to cast an eye . . . (to look over, evaluate)

—the eye is the mirror of the soul . . . (honest reflection of thoughts)

—an eye for an eye . . . (equal revenge)

—have an eye for . . . (to desire, to assess)

—keep an eye on . . . (watch)

—keep your eyes open . . . (stay alert)

Sight is also reflected in such expressions as:

—foresighted decisions

—shortsighted decisions

—eye witness . . . (someone who was present)

—an eyesore . . . (untidy place)

Add your own expressions to this list.

*Cultivation of speech*

*Power of:  
sound  
vibration*

Another step towards the cultivation of speech is the emphasis on Mantra. The power of sound, the power of vibration, can only be achieved if the aspirant is very careful not to allow the Mantra practice to deteriorate into mechanicalness. In the same way that somebody will say, “I love you,” using a great deal of emotion to convey deep feeling, so in Mantra the voice (speech) and emotions must work together.

The emotions expressed can be hope, longing, determination, or desire to achieve the power of the Mantra, to experience the power of sound working in others as well as oneself. Prolonged Mantra chanting, which means a couple of hours a day for some months, will bring the effect of directing and pinpointing the vibrations in the body. The aspirant must also renounce a very common need these days, the demand for results. This may be necessary in the beginning to make one feel secure that one is on the right track. In the same way, while it is all right to be aware that at a certain stage in one's life one "needs to be needed," the aspirant must guard against a dependency on that emotion. The importance of the practice of Mantra can be summed up by saying that the eventual goal of Mantra consciousness is obtained when the power of the Mantra manifests during sleep, when one awakes not with a dream but with a Mantra.

*Expression of emotions*

*Power of the Mantra*

1) Chant a Mantra of your choice, paying attention to the breath. This links emotions with sound and is a good way to hear the emotion in your voice. This is an outlet for the restlessness caused by the emotions.

*Exercises  
Listening to  
one's voice*

2) Hold an imaginary conversation, allowing the play of emotions to take place.

Repeat, controlling the emotions.

Use a tape recorder and play back and listen to the emotions in the voice.

Hearing yourself speak can bring attention to several things:

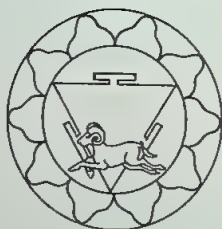
*Listening to  
one's speech*

- Is the voice soft because of fear of saying the wrong thing?
- Is it soft because of a poor self-image?
- Is the voice strong and powerful?
- Is there determination to be heard, to override others?

—Or is the voice strong and clear because the mind is clear, the emotions are clear?

*Focal points*

These again are only a few focal points to pay attention to. Each aspirant will have to discover the various differences and possibilities in these random lists, think of the meaning of the expressions that are used, and add and clarify any other personal ones. Again you are reminded that this is a small selection and your lists could be very much longer.





## Thoughts on Sight

The Tattva of this Cakra is the controlling (differentiating) intelligence of SIGHT (Agni). When dealing with sight we have to recognize the different manifestations of this sense in sattvic, rajasic, and tamasic expressions. It is necessary to clarify our thoughts on sight.

What would your life be if you had no sight? Have you taken sight for granted? Is there a difference between "I look" and "I see"? What is sight? Do the eyes record as efficiently as a photographic camera? Watch the process of seeing, then analyze it. When you "look" do you "see"? When does awareness come in? Can sight be cultivated?

In fact, all five senses have to be exercised to bring them to their very best. If seeing is a mental process as well as physical, then the question of "How do I see?" carries more importance. If the eyes register the visual impression and the mind interprets it, then is "clear sight" really possible? When the mind interprets, what is the basis of the interpretation? What prevents clear sight?

The answer might point to the emotions. Mind the interpreter is perhaps not as reliable as it is often considered (particularly when logic is claimed as its attribute) because the emotions insert their own filters, different colored filters for different emotions.

This is evident in the number of different ways an accident can be seen by several witnesses. In each case the personal emotional filters, formed from past experience, likes and dislikes, or even the thoughts that were in the mind immediately prior to the event, influence the perception of what has been observed. Clear sight is sattvic, uncolored perception.

Sight has to be investigated in the same way as the previous senses to understand what it means and how it functions, not so much from the anatomical

*What if you  
had no sight?*

*"I look"  
"I see"*

*Mind the  
interpreter*

*Emotions*

*Clear sight*

*Sight: its part  
in eating*

point of view as to be aware of what is happening when one sees something. For example, food is selected by the eyes for its appearance, its freshness. Immediately one sees appetizing food, the mouth begins to water. The saying that the eyes are bigger than the stomach is well-known. It might be very helpful to know which of the senses is most stimulated towards eating and what part sight plays in this.

*Information  
about  
surroundings*

A quick glance at surroundings can give information about conditions. They are speedily assessed by the mind as to whether they are favorable or unfavorable. If an object is in the way, seeing it makes one either remove it or walk around it, unless the sight has been diverted, in which case, one will probably trip over it.

*Concentration,  
meditation,  
contemplation*

If the exercises are done as they are laid out in the following pages, the aspirant will find that the control that is achieved is a power in itself, and that a more intense level of concentration, meditation, and contemplation will be reached. The power of concentration is obvious in the lives of Yogis, but it is present also in people who are successful in daily life. With respect to Kuṇḍalinī Yoga, the books tell of Yogis who have siddhis (special powers) capable of accomplishing phenomenal feats, bordering on the miraculous.<sup>7</sup>

*The problem  
of proof*

This may be difficult to believe for the Westerner. However, proof will lie not in the witnessing of someone else's extraordinary acts, but rather in one's own achievements. Power of concentration does increase and when, after a few years of practice, a greater level of intense concentration is achieved, it must be realized that one has still not reached the highest limit. The power can continue to increase to a miraculous degree.

*Seeing facts*

Seeing facts as they are helps to build confidence and make a person stronger. If one can see what is, instead of what one wants to see, there is much less self-inflicted pain. It may seem cruel to be

urged to give up one's illusions, but to insist on seeing what is not there must someday lead to a rude awakening. The result is pain and this pain is self-created.

The sattvic, rajasic, and tamasic qualities apply to sight as well as to emotions. Both need to be cultivated. The physical eye which can appreciate high quality craftsmanship will develop creative inner sight which will manifest in due time. Raw and powerful emotions have to be cultivated into refined feelings through this in(ner) sight. Sensitivity to one's own emotions, to one's own ego, has to be cultivated until one responds with fine feelings, with understanding (I see what you mean), until eventually the cultivated feelings reach the level of compassion—compassion for others. All self-development must be used in helping others if a higher level of consciousness and the Goal of Liberation are to be achieved.

After examining sight, insight, and the mind's eye, investigation of the sense of sight can be taken one step further, to the third eye, which is indicated as having its location in the space between the eyebrows. No physical eye is involved. We are dealing with the center of sight that is in the brain, in which the power of sight is located.

### THE POWER THAT HAS CREATED THE EYE CAN SEE.

This would also apply to all other senses. Intuition is the highly refined expression of a sense, in this case of sight, which takes on almost the quality of the third eye. Like the blood that moves through the whole body, the Energy moves through all the senses to a greater or lesser degree.

*Sattvic,  
rajasic,  
and tamasic  
qualities*

*Inner sight*

*Third eye*

*Intuition*



## Sight: Exercises

*I see. The act of seeing. What is seen?*

*"How do I see myself and others?"*

You might start this investigation with "Do I see myself? How do I see myself?" When these questions are asked for the first time the answers should be written down. At another time when that same question is posed again, the answer will be significantly different because of the previous "insight."

Continue this investigation with such questions as: "How do others see me—my husband, wife, son, daughter, co-worker?" "Do I identify with others? How do I see them? Do I see myself in others? What should I identify with? How can I see myself? When do I screen things out? What is it that I don't want to see? Why?"

*Intentional blindness*

It is necessary to see where one keeps oneself intentionally blind and to clarify what screens are put up in front of things we do not want to see. Every emotion erects its own screen, preventing clear sight.

*Identify screens*

Try to identify the screens, the emotions, expressed by:

—I saw red and didn't know what I was doing.

—I can't see this person or this object going out of my life.

To see something that is not there means one cannot see clearly what is there.

*Habitual way of seeing*

Check your habitual way of looking at things. Find out where you are not recording what you have *seen*—with the inner eye as well as the physical eye.

*Interplay of sight and emotion*

In all these investigations there must be the overriding thought "knowing myself will make me free." Here in the Maṇipūra or Third Cakra, the interplay of the forces of sight and emotions is particularly powerful.

Look at an inanimate object such as a piece of wood, a glass of water, piece of cloth, sheet of paper, for 3 minutes and note the intruding thoughts which prevent single-pointedness of sight in regard to the object. Now, for comparison, look at a photograph of a loved or revered person, or the image of a Deity, or the picture of a child, a bird, a flower. Afterwards notes can be compared and the ability to concentrate established. The exercise could be timed for greater accuracy.

Sit comfortably facing another person and look into each other's eyes for a certain period of time, without moving or talking, trying not to blink. Observe the activity of the mind and the emotions and later record these observations.

Create a painting or sculpture in your mind's eye, or use an image from the first exercise. Again observe what happens and check how long you are able to hold your concentration and which of the objects holds the concentration longest.

Sitting quietly and observing the mind is like seeing with the mind's eye, seeing what appears on one's mental screen. Notes should be taken periodically and the material later looked over and dealt with where necessary. There is much to learn about one's mind and about thought association, which in time becomes extremely helpful and revealing. Problem areas which appear over and over have to be dealt with, otherwise they will become a disturbance and an almost insurmountable obstacle to meditation. The time spent doing this exercise can begin with 10 minutes and then be doubled, tripled, and so on.

Look at an ordinary stone for not less than 3 minutes. Then shift to a semi-precious or precious stone, what-

Exercises:

*I. Looking at an object for 3 minutes*

*II. Looking into the eyes of another person*

*III. Seeing in the mind's eye*

*IV. Observing the mind*

*V. Looking at a stone*

ever is available, and recognize its symbolic meaning for you.

*VI. Looking  
at colors*

Look at the colors in your room. Fix your eyes for a few minutes on one color at a time. Clarify what the colors mean to you.

*VII. Visual-  
ize a flame*

In your mind's eye see a flame. Does it consume anything? Or is something emerging from the flame? Now visualize your Heart Center. Imagine a blue flame on an altar there. Take the flame and place it on the heads of friends or loved ones. Write down what comes to mind during this visualization.

*VIII. A-U-M  
visualization*

Chant AUM mentally. Then visualize the word in block letters as clearly as possible.

*IX. Trataka:  
looking at a  
dot*

Place a colored dot on a plain background. The dot should be one-half to three-quarters inch in size. Look at the dot without blinking until the eyes water. Practice must be kept up to lengthen the time.

Now, looking at the dot, breathe in, hold the breath, tense the hands, let the breath out and relax. Again write down all observations.

Make a comparison of concentration on the dot and on looking into a person's eyes (exercise II).

*X. Concen-  
tration on  
silver disc*

Sit in a comfortable position and think of the navel. Focus your eyes on the spot between the eyebrows. Form a clear picture of a silver disc (the moon) on top of your navel. When the picture is clear, bring in feeling and watch the coolness move in concentric circles, mingling pleasantly with your body heat. If the mind becomes active beyond the concentration on the silver disc and the cool feeling, add some bold letters such as LOVE, PEACE, GOD or LIGHT.



Sit with the spine straight, neck and shoulders relaxed, breathing steady. Make yourself comfortable. Think of the Buddha or an image of your choice. Focus all your attention on this image. Now see the figure sitting on top of your head. Think of your spine continuing into the spine of the figure. Choose the most meaningful image of perfection for you and see it as a human form sitting cross-legged on top of your head. Record all that happens.

*XI. Visualization of figure on top of your head*

Gaze in a mirror at your face, portrait size, including neck and shoulders. What do you see? A face of resentment or pain? Is it a face one can trust? Does it look deceitful or does the inner Light show through? What kind of face do you see?

*XII. Looking at your image in a mirror*

Look at your face for 2 or 3 minutes, then close your eyes and visualize it. Make brief notes. Double the time for the next period of looking and continue closing the eyes, visualizing, making notes, until you are able to hold the image with closed eyes.

When you can successfully see in your mind's eye the image of yourself that was reflected in the mirror, project your image into the sky.

*Project image into the sky*

Continue the practice of the Divine Light Invocation, now putting more emphasis on sight (visualization) and on feeling.

*XIII. Divine Light Invocation*

There is no depth of understanding of the sense of sight unless these exercises are done, and these are only a beginning. With every exercise always remember, "I see, the act of seeing, and what is seen?" Follow this process to understand the sense of sight and its effect.

## Thoughts on Imagination, Mind, and Energy

*The Energy is  
formless*

At each turn in the practice, the aspirant is reminded of the fact that the Energy is originally formless and shapeless, and the contribution made by the imagination to its manifestation is the responsibility of the user. The Energy, having moved from the Mūlādhāra Cakra to the Svādhiṣṭhāna, is here now in the Maṇipūra Cakra where the imagination and strong emotions, in interaction with the sense of sight, have welded it into desires. The images welling up are like clay, with a form yet soft, able to change shape. But once they are put into the kiln of the emotions they are hardened by the self-will and, if left there, can in the course of time, become as hard as rock, difficult to destroy when the aspirant becomes aware that this must be done.

*Effect of  
imagination  
and strong  
emotions*

*Passions*

Passions are not limited to sex. One can be passionate about forms and shapes, and also about ideas and concepts.

*Concepts*

Concepts that have been formed on this level can be compared to the clay images, put into the emotional kiln and burned with passion. We love our concepts and they occupy a large place in our lives. Such concepts acquire, in due time, an almost hypnotic power. Sometimes it seems impossible to act contrary to them even when reason indicates that we should. Also, our emotions cause intentional blindness. From earlier times of development there seem to be some appendages, old habits that constantly cause difficulties, such as procrastination, self-pity, and the desire to compensate.

*Habits*

By the time the aspirant comes to practice Kuṇḍalinī Yoga many habits have been established: habitual thinking, habitual feeling, habitual defences

to things one does not want to hear, actions and reactions, compulsions, and the teeter-totter of the pairs of opposites. A very important pair of opposites is the power of positive thinking and the power of negative thinking. Negative thinking exerts such a strong power because of the pushing up of the emotions, which are controlled by the ego. The power of positive thinking needs to get its push from repeated (cultivated) visualizations of ideal responses to situations in the mind's eye. This point will become clearer through watching the mind.

*Power of positive and negative thinking*

Gradually the aspirant will become aware that the mind interprets everything we experience in reference to ourselves. The awareness has come through the refinement and cultivation of the senses, which are the doors and windows to the world. Such refinement will bring us into more sensitive touch with those around us, because no man is an island. The single cell of the body functions in conjunction with all the other cells and its very existence depends on the cooperation of all other cells. Similarly, each individual could be compared to a cell in this great Cosmic body that we name in various ways. Self-importance makes for a separation that will only lead to isolation.

*Interpretation of the mind*

Because of imagination, the images in dreams need to be observed. To know them, their influence and even control, is very important when exploring the already-known powers of the mind. It is important to know what the mind manufactures when the consciousness is dimmed in sleep. It takes a great deal of courage to accept the messages which often tell the dreamer an unpleasant truth that ought to be known. A combination of humility, prayer, and courage will help the dreams to become very clear, very much to the point.

*Dream images*

*Humility, prayer, and courage bring clear dreams*

There are many schools of dream interpretation, but it is wise, particularly in the case of the beginner, not to mix schools of thought.



# Imagination, Mind, and Energy

## *Making a list*

*You create  
your world*

*How do you create your world?* Are you happy with it? If not, can you destroy it and create it anew?

*Habitual  
looking*

Habitual looking at things and people, groups or individuals, belongs to the pattern of mechanicalness which indicates blindness. At this point, it will be helpful to make a list to see the habitual pattern of mechanicalness in regard to sight, illusions, and perhaps even cherished beliefs.

*See your  
beliefs*

*See your beliefs.*

—Where do they come from?

—What is the foundation?

—How much is wishful thinking and how much true knowing?

—What happens when you assume an opposite position from your beliefs?

—Does this become disturbing?

*Look at facts*

If you can follow through with this process of looking at facts clearly, there will be no flaring emotions if someone else opposes your beliefs, because you have already done it yourself. That investigative process may have moved you from one end of the teeter-totter closer to the center. Functioning closer to the center and the benefits of such functioning will now bring new insights.

*List of habits*

In making a list of mechanicalness and habits, it may be helpful to divide the list. Go through the day in your mind and think of all the things that you do habitually. Do you always:

—Eat certain foods at certain times of the day . . .  
or on certain days of the week?

- Limit some activities to definite times?
- Allow too little time for activities, resulting in rush?
- Perform routine tasks with little awareness of doing them?

In making this list, think of your actions and reactions.

- Do you become defensive when criticized?
- Do some mannerisms make you feel hostile?
- Are you intimidated by certain people?
- Does a person's appearance cause you to react favorably or unfavorably?
- Do you have an emotional response to witnessing certain situations?

*Mechanical  
behavior*

Both of these lists can be expanded greatly and will be helpful in understanding yourself and increasing awareness, in awakening from that "sleepwalker" state.

The work of laying a foundation is mainly done in the first three Cakras and it is, therefore, very important because *any imagined short-coming is just that—imagined*. It is not a fact. The intense examination of the use of the senses up to this point—smell, taste, and sight—with emotion and imagination shows the immensity of the work that has been done by a Yogi who has achieved even a small degree of realization. Each step may seem to be cruel and one will attempt to resist fact and to hold on to imaginary conditions or circumstances, or to desires and hopes. Any dreams in daily life are only illusions and the awakening from those dreams is sometimes much more cruel than the demands of the yogic Path. To see facts as they are helps to build confidence and makes a person stronger. If one can see what is, instead of what one wants to see, there is much less self-created pain.

*Focus*

*Sight  
Emotion  
Imagination  
Desires*

*Seeing facts*

Straight-walk thinking implies straight-walk living, means meeting situations head-on instead of imagining that things are different and covering them up

*Straight-walk  
thinking*

by foggy thinking, or just doing nothing and hoping that the problems, worries, and decisions will go away.

*Sight  
Insight*

Sight (inner sight) is strongly linked with concentration. The ability of intense concentration is the key to success in all walks of life and also in the cultivation and the development to greater depths of all physical, mental, and emotional tools that are available to everyone.

*Concentration: seeing in  
the mind's eye  
at will*

Concentration can be roughly described as seeing in the mind's eye at will, for a specific length of time, a chosen object. The aspirant must find out how long the span of concentration is and learn which objects hold the attention for the longest time and which for a shorter period.

*Abstract or  
concrete image*

The understanding of whether the aspirant visualizes an image of an abstract or a concrete nature is important when the choice is made for concentration. (For example, can you think of yourself without holding on to your physical appearance? Can you see yourself as a mass of Light? A body of Light without density?) The daily diary reporting the happenings, the exercises, and the emerging thoughts about them, as well as dreams and their interpretation, becomes a kind of gold mine in one's own backyard and makes clear which way the mind of the aspirant works. Careful study will show how, step by step, one gets in touch with the innermost being, which becomes the guiding force to further development. It also becomes a source of energy which one can draw on for the necessary enthusiasm and drive needed to carry on this formidable task of continued self-development.

*Contact with  
the inner Self*

*Attention  
Dark clouds*

Put the spotlight of attention on:

- A. Where are my dark clouds?
- B. How do these dark clouds develop?
- C. Can I detect them when they emerge?

- A. Which are the areas where I act under compulsion of the emotions?



B. Do I value "emotional investments" higher than reason?

C. What would be a good *key sentence* if I want to make changes?

(Example: FIRST THINK, THEN ACT)

Key sentences are reminders in a nutshell.

*Key Sentence*

A. How would this compare with using another person as a sounding board *or* brainstorming?

*Sounding  
board*

B. Can I detach myself sufficiently to be clear in my own mind which of the processes (sounding board, brainstorming or key sentence reminder) will be most effective for me in a specific situation?

*Brainstorming*

A few more focal points would be:

- 1) Delay tactics of the mind—emotions.
- 2) Traps laid out by the mind—emotions.
- 3) Habits of criticism and judgment—emotions.

Delay tactics and traps:

- to do the job tomorrow.
- to deposit in the past, or postpone until the future, matters which should be dealt with in the present.
- to remain intentionally blind to avoid taking action, making decisions.
- to *pretend* unawareness.

Where do I use delay tactics?

- job, study, work, cleaning up, tidying . . .

Ways to practice awareness:

- paying attention
- recording observations, dreams, diary
- physical exercises (Hatha Yoga)
- mental/emotional exercises (Yoga):
  - . . . watching the mind
  - . . . concentrating on one object
  - . . . reflecting on daily events
  - . . . reflecting on meanings of words, ideas

Please remember that making a list for one's own clarification must not lead to the habit of looking for loopholes. A wide area of choices for development must be recognized and evaluated, but the greater responsibility that goes with the new awareness can be more easily accepted through clearer thinking, by whatever process you choose. It is impossible to cover the countless possibilities of which the mind and emotions of each individual are capable. Again it is suggested to expand the process of clarification as the aspirant progresses.

## Thoughts on Emotions, Mind, and Energy

*Emotions  
cloud  
observation*

For a long time in the aspirant's life it seems that emotions are always upsetting the balance, and so observation is clouded by vanity, pride or false modesty. A critical attitude towards oneself and others and the resulting emotions are responsible for the drive of competition. *In the life of an aspirant there can be no competition.* The aspirant is like a flower in the field. It grows and it does not measure itself against other flowers of the same kind or of other kinds.

*Reflection*

Reflection is mirroring the events of the day and trying to assess one's performance on all levels. Without reflection one would not know when pain is unavoidable or when it is self-created. By our own attitude, we can take situations as helpful or hurtful. Often one is simply inconvenienced, not hurt. If there is an accident, such as cutting one's finger, when one is physically hurt, that may be due to lack of observation and, therefore, also self-created. Pain has to be recognized as a great teacher. There might be painful experiences of past lives which, not dealt with at the time, show up again in the present life.

*Pain is a  
teacher*

The average person may never encounter a process of developing latent potentials, but, as in man-made law, so in Divine Law, ignorance is no excuse. For the ignorant person, life often appears to be merciless, making that person feel like a leaf in the wind, blown here and there, helpless. The possibility of self-mastery on the physical and on the mental-emotional levels seems to be hidden from such persons. The Eastern teacher defines a secret as that which is not known. The average human being assumes that what is not known does not exist.

*Development  
of latent  
potentials*

The Mañipūra Cakra, located in the region of the navel, is the seat of the emotions. The powerful influence of that center on the body needs to be studied and understood. The aspirant is probably aware of the hypnotic effect of one's own negative emotions. By applying positive thinking in concrete images, this power can be used constructively. Emotions can be of different kinds, like fire and water. When one "sees red," the emotions are so powerful that they prevent clear sight. Later, upon reflection, one can observe what has happened and by a process of reasoning, balance can be re-established.

*Seat of  
emotions*

As a means of increasing control of such disturbing emotions, do an exercise of three minutes concentration on water. A drop of water is like a drop of emotions: small, it can be wiped off easily. A bucket of water, if it spills, is much more work to clean up. Think of a lake as symbolizing emotions—what is the depth? Murkiness of the water prevents clear sight to the bottom. Water takes on a shape and form of its own if not controlled and regulated.

*Water:  
a drop  
a bucketful*

Let us suppose that the eyes wander to the sky. There are some clouds screening out the sunlight. "Can I see things only in reference to myself? Then what about the clouds of my mind? What are they made of? . . . emotions? If emotions can interfere with clear sight, then I must 'look' at the emotions to keep myself from 'blindness.'" When blindness

*Clouds  
Emotions  
Blindness*



is physical, other senses in the blind person take over and become more acute. But when blindness is emotional, it means one does not want to see. How many times do you say, "I don't want to know." In order to see more clearly it helps to say to yourself, "Let me look at some of my emotions like jealousy, attachment, self-pity, and the old habits of procrastination and self-justification, to name only a few."

## Emotions, Mind, and Energy

### *Making a list*

*Image of God  
as focus*

*Refining  
emotions*

The image of God in the mind serves these purposes: 1) to focus attention for a longer period of concentration, 2) to refine or even develop through acts of worship certain emotions such as gratitude, empathy, loyalty, and 3) to break the monotony of spiritual practice so that it goes beyond one's "time limit" (the limit of one's inclination). This means that there is at the beginning a length of time of concentration and enthusiasm, but when this is exhausted the aspirant needs to be inspired either to make a new start or to be encouraged to continue to reach for higher and higher goals in concentration and refinement of emotions.

*Substitution  
of image by  
the Light*

The next step in cultivation of emotions is replacing in the mind the concrete image of the Deity with the Light. This is much more difficult and demands greater awareness, discrimination, and a deep sense of gratitude.

*Opposites*

For every emotion that you experience, there is an opposite one. Think now of as many emotions as you can and find their opposites. Try to think of ways in which you can change negative emotions into positive, using the following examples:

Gloom—cheerfulness:

Create cheerfulness by singing a happy tune.  
Go for a walk, or do so mentally.  
Imagine a beautiful garden; look at the flowers.

Anger, harshness—love, mercy:

Think how one person full of love and mercy  
can have an impact on the lives of many others.

Criticism—acceptance:

*All are precious in the eyes of Śakti.*

Form similar sentences yourself to act as reminders.

Dependencies are numerous. List them. Then realize that the process of thinking is *dependent* on the brain. "I" (as a personality) *depend* on the ability to think. Without thinking "I" do not exist, there is no awareness. "I" (as a personality) *depend* on discrimination to recognize illusions.

*Dependencies*

Repeat the exercise using the silver disc, which was given in the previous section on Sight Exercises, this time putting the emphasis on feeling.

Exercises:  
*Silver disc*

Walk around a room making a circle with both arms, moving them out from the chest, extending them full length, then bringing them back about level with the Third Cakra and up to chest height. Say aloud and listen to your own voice reinforcing, "I am functioning from my center." The reinforcement of hearing this repeated aloud is very effective. Doing this exercise ten times, even once a day, will bring a good reminder on other occasions when the aspirant may be off-center, that it is possible to return to the center at any time it is so decided.

*"I am functioning from my center"*

See in the mind's eye some esthetically unpleasant, or even violent, scene that may have been witnessed

*Seeing in the mind's eye*

on television, or one involving a strong emotion such as revenge or resentment towards some individual. Imagine what you would do if you had the courage to do it. Observe the rising emotions. Repeat several times and observe any other emotions such as satisfaction at having done it, even though only in the imagination. Observe the destructiveness of the emotions of which one is capable and that they are not justified. Consider that such emotions could be directed against yourself and think of how you would feel.

From this exercise you will be able to recognize the source within yourself of forces that manifest harmfully.

Then, for the proper balance and understanding, it will be necessary to create and imagine an ideal situation, elevating, happy, and joyful. Of course, in the same way that there was a receiver of the negative, now there will be a receiver of the positive. So choose your ideal companion and observe the emotions involved in this situation.

*Balance the  
emotions*

The objective of the exercise, now that both parts have been done and the emotions have been observed, is to balance these opposites and to tone down the harmful and destructive, as well as the benevolent emotions. To achieve this balance, the emphasis on the daily diary has to be intensified. The reflection has to result in accepting the facts as they are, with as little emotional coloring as possible.

The exercises given here can be replaced with actual people who are known in life, actual situations from the past or anticipated in the future.

*Full  
responsibility*

The aspirant has to take full responsibility for the cultivation of the emotions. Even one's own Higher Self is only going to cooperate if there is evidence of effort and will and desire to achieve a higher state, beyond the ordinary.

*Gratitude*

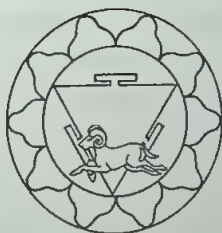
It is necessary to develop a feeling of gratitude, so that it becomes natural and emerges on its own



account. It would be wise to make a list of all in life that one has reason to be grateful for.

Also list the actions done to other people that one feels they should be grateful for, in order to examine one's own need to receive gratitude from others. The renouncement of the fulfillment of one's needs has to be properly understood. It is not repressing needs, it is rather controlling the fulfillment of those needs. Clarification can reduce the compelling pressures from needs. It is important not to fall into the trap of our times which advocates the fulfillment of needs. If we felt this to be essential, we would have to allow our children to have everything they wanted. What counts for the baby on the human level also counts for the spiritual baby. Discrimination and self-control must be exercised. Discipline has to be accepted.

*Renouncing  
fulfillment of  
needs*



# Thoughts on Dreams

*Understanding of dreams brings independence*

In dreams we are able to contact the Higher Self, the Guru within. The understanding of one's own dreams, and the discipline that comes with it, has exceedingly useful results which the aspirant will discover from the practice: independence from the criticism of others and from habitual self-assessment and the awareness of a new dimension that becomes more and more available.

*Recall of dreams*

As an aid in recalling dreams, keep by the bedside paper, pencil, and a light of some kind. Just before going to sleep repeat to yourself, "I will remember my dream and write it down." If this is said with conviction and repeated at least twice, you will find that you do remember your dreams. Write down whatever you do remember, even if it is not complete, as even fragments can carry a message. Dreams should be written down immediately after awakening. If no dream is recalled the first thought should be written down. A brief interpretation, even if incomplete or partial, should be noted in a separate paragraph. Another commentary that is useful to add is the events that took place, or the mental preoccupation that was present, before the dream occurred.

*Functioning of the mind during sleep*

The daily diary can in this way be used in conjunction with the record of your dreams. The two go together like one hand washing the other.

Pay attention to how the mind functions during the sleep state, how it changes perception of time and space and the way it can shift very quickly. It is useful to ponder the meaning of time and space and the shifting of events, because, in our mind, we do the same thing in daily life. In our thoughts we move from one thing to another without awareness of doing so.

*Dream dictionary*

You will find it useful to incorporate the symbols that appear in your dreams into a dictionary of

your own. It is wise not to consult any dream symbol books, nor to follow any particular school, but to discover how that part of the mind expresses ideas over and over again in symbols that are very personal to the dreamer. With practice it becomes obvious that dreams, too, take on various levels and become more clear, more easily understood, and direct.

## Thoughts on Worship

The transmuting of emotional forces into spiritual energy is accomplished through the practice of worship. Worship in temples and churches has been a means of escalating raw emotions and their powerful manifestation into genuine feelings of high quality. Modern life has lessened the activity of worship of supreme beings, but the inborn need for worship is suppressed only in part by intellectual pride, and it emerges in many disguises—in worship of power and money. Many people worship football heroes, boxers, movie stars; even intellectuals hold in great reverence persons with power, social status or high academic achievement.

*Transmuting  
emotional  
forces*

When worship in any religion becomes routine and the ideals are lost, the fire of enthusiasm dies and corruption follows. In a church or center, all activities such as worship may, in the course of time, become regimented for the sake of discipline and harmony. Such stabilizing of rituals and worship to maintain a high level of performance inevitably leads to an atmosphere in which the personal experience can no longer take place.

*Dangers of  
routine and  
regimentation*

Once again the aspirant is advised to use discrimination and awareness not to fall into the numerous traps that worship of the wrong power can set. In the beginning worship is a wonderful way to cultivate emotions and transmute them into a high level



of refined feelings which will become a spring of spiritual energy. Ego pride that hinders such a necessary step as humble devotion, eliminating this important rung of the spiritual ladder, can result in disaster—the disaster of worshipping false gods.

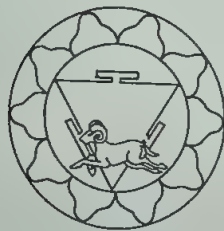
*An image as a  
reminder*

In worship, one can take a picture or image of a Deity that is the total of one's understanding of the Supreme Intelligence, such as Śiva or Pārvatī, and use it as a reminder. Most of us are not so bad, but we do tend to forget, and the serious or earnest aspirant who wants to make headway should make use of such aids to keep memory alive.

*Chanting as  
worship*

There is an alternative to the worship through the eyes in conjunction with the emotions, and this is worship through speech and hearing in conjunction with the emotions—chanting. Anger and agony, laughter and pleading, sorrow and peace, gratitude and humility, can all be expressed beautifully through one's voice. If gratitude and admiration for the Cosmic Intelligence as it manifests are intermingled, understanding on a higher level is nearing. That cultivation will result in such a state that never again will one have a sense of pleasure when someone else falls or fails and there will never again be unhappiness and jealousy when others succeed.

*The innate Divine majesty in everyone is remembered through the practice of worship. Each aspirant is entitled to create or develop worship in a most personal way.*



## Additional Thoughts on Sex

In view of what has been discussed so far, it becomes necessary to have another *look* at sex. *See* the compulsion with which it manifests, passionately, with burning fire, in contrast to the spontaneity of feelings which have been refined from strong emotions.

If emotions cause compulsive action, trouble will follow. In contrast to compulsive emotion stands spontaneity. The difference between the two has to be clearly understood because of the possibility of misinterpretation. Spontaneity is empowered to surface suddenly from cultivated feelings of goodness, even selflessness.

*Compulsive  
emotion*

*Spontaneity*

Now that you have clarified many of your ideas and thoughts about sex, here are a few more for your consideration:

- Sexual impulses generating by themselves or through another.
- What is creative sexual expression?  
Avoid using many words, but truly give your ideas.
- Sex as a seduction game:
  - . . . by men, resulting in what?
  - . . . by women, resulting in what?
- The sex game of the conqueror, the hunter, the seducer.
- What is sex without affection?
- What is affection without sex?
- Does sex remove the scars of rejection?
- Are sex and spirituality different?
- Are sex and spirituality expressions of the same energy?
- By yielding to sexual spontaneity is the door kept open to higher consciousness?

# Thoughts on Kuṇḍalinī, God, Energy

*Mind and  
consciousness*

If God or an image of Him is the creation of the mind, then mind should also be investigated. What is mind? And it may be practical to find out if there is a difference in meaning between mind and consciousness, or if these two terms are used interchangeably. Whatever the concept of an individual, let us agree on a starting point: Consciousness is Energy.

*Energy*

How can Energy be known? Its presence is recognized in its manifestations. The old Yogis stated that Energy and its manifestations are inseparable. Some texts refer to that Energy as Light, some use the mother as symbol—she gives birth to the child. Energy gives birth to various creations. She is the Great Mother. As the Mother of all, She is called Śakti. This is a simple way to explain what cannot be said in the words that are used in daily communication. This is poetic expression and poetry is the language of inspiration.

*Energy as  
Light, as  
Mother Śakti*

*Liberation  
from all  
limitations*

The yogic Path is the pursuit of liberation from all limitations. *We have to begin where we are.* It has to be recognized that man's drive and inner restlessness are there, but by courageously changing the viewpoint from old established positions, something different can happen. New avenues of thought can come into focus. First these may not be too clear and therefore they cannot be accurately defined, yet that very unclear, foggy notion puts man onto the search for higher values in life. Maybe there is a purpose in all that happens, be it pleasant or unpleasant. In any event, it is worth finding out.

Could it be that the Energy is one underlying force pervading all things manifest? Maybe all the effort to separate things for classifying, organizing,



and recording is, if necessary at all, only a self-gratification, a need for self-importance.

*At this point, take a deep breath and decide to begin the search.* Take only one step at a time to explore the new territory safely. It is like emigrating to a new country. One collects facts, as many as possible, plans wisely, avoids undue haste. The old habit of separating, organizing, and recording is very useful in this new territory, but now it is done for the purpose of clarification of all concepts and ideas.

In this pursuit, arrogance and blindness, coupled with insensitivity to finer forces within and without, can be changed. The Path of Kuṇḍalinī is precise in its minute development; it is a good and safe guide. If, at this point, we cannot say what Kuṇḍalinī is, we can anticipate results from following certain instructions. By recording thoughts, dreams, daily events, and, most important, the outcome of those instructions, all of which mirror where we are, we can anticipate the next step, nourished and encouraged to pursue the Path.

In this way, the aspirant comes to personal conclusions and learns to accept that these, too, are constantly changing as the process goes on. It is wiser never to think that the final answer has come. This would mean limiting what is Unlimited. Kuṇḍalinī Yoga includes all aspects and characteristics of the human being. There is Divinity in all of us, the difference lies only in the degree of that awareness. To achieve greater awareness is what Kuṇḍalinī is all about.

What about the unhappiness, confusion, tragedy in the world? We must understand that all human drama, joyful or tragic, is but a means to the expansion of consciousness—to realize the imperishable Divine SELF.

If one has learned to read and write, one has power over those who do not. Any position of power

*Separating,  
classifying,  
organizing,  
recording*

*Path of  
Kuṇḍalinī:  
a safe guide*

*Nourishment  
to pursue the  
Path*

*Purpose of  
Kuṇḍalinī:  
to realize the  
Divine SELF*

*Power:  
a temptation*

can lead to abuse. If one has money, one has power over the poor. If one has awareness, one has power over the sleepwalker. All powers are a temptation. If there is a latent weakness in the personal make-up, power will lead to corruption, whatever the power is.

*Balance*

We know about the balance of power in world affairs—if the balance is tipped, wars of aggression result. In our own lives, the balance of our positive and negative characteristics and ambitions is important, and the constant interplay of forces between the senses and the levels of consciousness must be controlled if the power is to be used wisely, in our own development and in the service of others.

*Interplay of  
forces*

*Follow  
instructions  
precisely*

The warnings about the practice of Kuṇḍalinī Yoga, particularly without the help of an experienced teacher, are well-founded. Carelessness will exact its price. When one cleans a gun and does not remove the bullet, somebody may be killed. Disregarding traffic signals may cause two cars to crash. Not listening to instructions, so that one can follow them precisely, will lead to problems on any spiritual path. There is no need to be fearful about the Path of Kuṇḍalinī when it is practiced with the help of an experienced teacher, or if scrupulous attention is paid to following each step in this book.

*The Absolute  
Kuṇḍalinī  
God*

The Absolute will remain in the far distance as long as one struggles with concepts about the different aspects of Kuṇḍalinī or God. It is like seeing a huge mountain in the distance, the snow-capped peak instills an awesome feeling and a desire to get there. Yet, as one begins to climb, sight of the peak is quickly obscured. The emotional reaction that one might be lost can turn into fear. One must have faith that the Path will lead to the top. Even the experienced mountaineer will occasionally encounter a feeling of fear. Courage does not drop into one's lap. Courage is gathered by overcoming fear. Faith is not gained unless one is willing to accept the darkness.

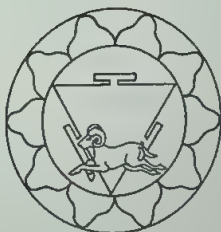
*Courage and  
faith are  
necessary*

If one can know Kuṇḍalinī only by experience, then what kind of experiences are they? As has already been pointed out, these experiences are individual and words are inadequate to describe them. But they can inspire the listeners to experience their own.

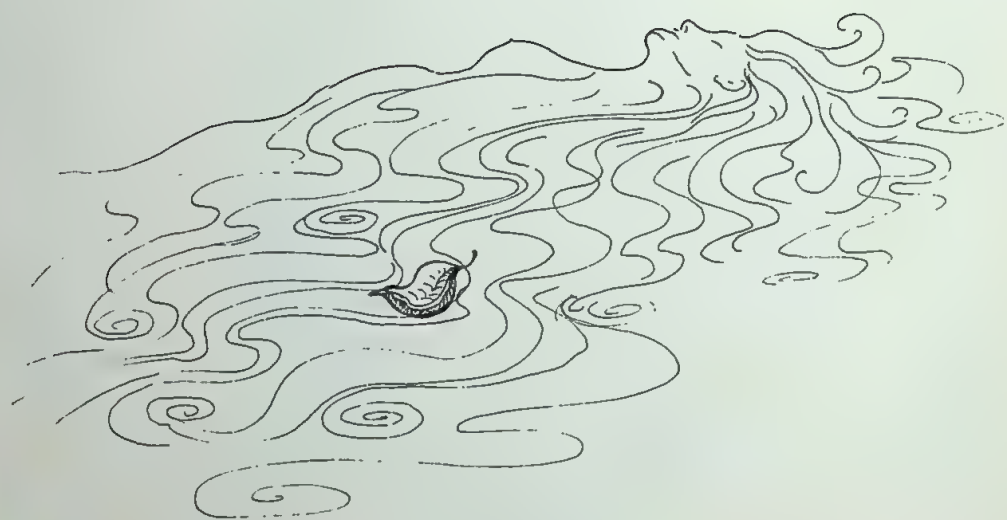
An important practice such as the Divine Light Invocation, which is given among the instructions, will bring about a unique experience. Careful observation will show that first the "grooves" of the old mental record have to be changed so that the nervous system can get used to a different rate of vibration, in the same way that one has to learn to sing in a high key. The voice does not jump there, but has to be trained and become flexible to expand its present limitation to reach the high notes.

The question, what is Kuṇḍalinī, what is this Cosmic Force, does have an answer. But the answer goes on expanding according to the level of understanding from which the question is posed. The answer comes also in that particular language that is unique to the questioner, in the same way that for one person God is a Supreme Being, for another God is the Energy in the atom.

*Experiences:  
Divine Light  
Invocation*







## Reflection on the Body as a Garden

In the garden of the body there are many paths.

Choose one.

Eyes sweep over this beautiful garden.

See with the eye of LIGHT.

An urge to touch.

Touch with sensitivity.

A deep breath brings fragrance to the nostrils.

A deep breath feels like expansion—unending.

What is this fragrance?

Who perceives it?

I? Who is I?

That little leaf bobbing up and down

on the waves of the mind's lake.

What direction?

Don't care—let go.

Surrender.

A floating leaf doesn't resist—

it doesn't leap either.

It allows itself to be carried.

A river of thoughts—where will they go?

To a big ocean?

One thought like a drop falling,

falling into the ocean

to be lost.

What is reality? What is mind?

An overwhelming feeling of gushing concepts

barely escaping the fire

of the emotional kiln.

Do you light the fire in the kiln of your emotions?

Can you blow it out when you want to?

Can you soften it?

Can you stay cool in the blazing fire of emotions of another?

Do you get ignited?

Try to put the fire out—by the water of your eyes.

Close your eyes.

See how the red veil changes.

Pink is love without passion.  
Love, the center of being—  
Love, the center of Light radiating—  
touching others,  
touching others and expanding.  
Heart filled with love, lungs filled with air,  
breath is gentle, breath is life.  
Power of life—breathing the breath of life.  
Inhale inspiration.  
Exhale despair.  
Swing with the rhythm of breath and life.  
Let the air flow back of its own accord.  
Stop and wait, hold the breath—but for how long?  
Nothing lasting, constant movement.  
Sailing thought on the mental lake.  
Music of the waves.  
Smell their fragrance,  
feel their vibrations.  
Feel the breath in the sound of the voice.  
See the fragrance of the flower  
moving through the air,  
dancing in the sun's bright Light  
subdued by the clouds,  
warmth touching gently, softly.  
Swirling Light, swirling air—vibrations,  
inside—outside.  
All Energy vibrating in unison.  
Love without passion.  
Love without fire.  
Luminous Light that reflects in dew drops  
on the thousand petalled Lotus.





*I venerate (revere, render devotional service)  
this pair of swans which swim in the mind  
of the great, feeding on the unique honey of  
the Lotus (heart) that is the opening of under-  
standing. From their chatter comes the develop-  
ment of the eighteen kinds of knowledge, and  
by using them one acquires all qualities out  
of defects, just like taking the milk from water.*

MANTRA FOR THE ANĀHATA CAKRA

## Chapter Seven



*Anāhata*

The Fourth Cakra



GOD: Īśa

GODDESS: Kākinī



Anāhata Cakra

# Anāhata

## The Fourth Cakra and its Symbols

ANĀHATA: The Fourth Cakra or Heart Lotus.  
(Celestial Wishing Tree)

Sound of Śabdabrahman (sound of bell) is heard without the issue of striking two things together.

TATTVA: Differentiating faculty.

54 RAYS: Relate to air (vāyu).

SPARŚA—Touch (feelings): Abode of Mercy (spiritual experiences).

TWELVE Lotus Petals: The Lotus is sacred.

COLOR of the Petals: Vermilion.

THE LETTERS on the Petals: KAM—KHAM—GAM—GHAM—  
NAM—CAM—CHAM—JAM—JHAM—ÑAM—ṬAM—  
THAM.

ṢAṬKONA—Two Triangles: One pointing up, one pointing down.  
The one pointing up symbolizes the aspirant's rise to the greater Power.

ANTELOPE: Black. The antelope is similar to the deer—a very shy, fast, and graceful-moving animal. Its symbolic expression here is connected with spiritual experiences which go before the self can grasp them and know them, moving quickly away from the eye of the ego.

BĪJA—Seed Sound: YAM.

PINĠALĀ: The Nāḍī on the right side of the body.

ĪDĀ: The Nāḍī on the left side of the body.

SUṢUMNĀ: The central channel in the spine.

CITRIṆĪ: Three in one (sattva, rajas, tamas). Body, mind, and speech.

GOD: Īśa: The male aspect of Energy unmanifest. (Haṃsa, swan, also the Sun).



The intelligence on this level is symbolized by Īśa, the Lord of Speech,<sup>2</sup> on a black antelope.

The Iṣṭadevatā is worshipped in the heart.

## OBJECTS:

*Gesture:* Vara(da)—granting boons.

Abhayamudrā—dispelling fears in the three worlds (past, present, and future).

GODDESS: Kākinī: The female aspect of Energy manifest.



The intelligence on this level is symbolized by the Goddess Kākinī, also on a black antelope.



## OBJECTS:

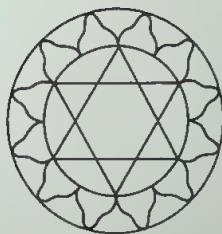
*Pāśa—Noose:* being caught in expectation of spiritual experiences.

*Skull:* pure mind.

*Gesture:* Vara(da)—granting boons.  
Abhayamudrā—dispelling fears.

The black antelope symbolizes fleetness; spiritual experiences are fleeting.

ĀNANDAKAṆḌA LOTUS: Below the Heart Cakra is the plane of mental worship. There the Kalpataru (celestial wishing tree) grants all one asks, leading to mokṣa.



## The Goddess of Speech— Śakti

The Cakras, as levels of consciousness, represent dynamic processes in man.

*Effect of  
breath (air)  
on speech*

The Anāhata Cakra controls air as well as touch. It is important to observe how speech comes about. A person who is out of breath can only speak with great difficulty. Obviously, speech without air is impossible, but the use of air, or the kind of breathing, affects speech in loudness or softness, melodiousness or abruptness. When we speak we set up currents in the air and we are responsible for these currents. The evolution of tamas, rajas, and sattva has to be given an important part in one's awareness.

*Noose of the  
Devī*

The Devī holds in Her hand a noose. This warns that we can be caught not only by our emotions in speech, but by speech itself. We can *love* to hear ourselves talk and be caught in this infatuation. The aspirant must be committed to truth in speech and thought.

*Clear  
definitions*

The process of clarifying the meaning of terms must be continued and, in this Cakra, you will have to define such words as "consciousness," "psychic," and "spiritual." This definition does not necessarily limit them because the meaning is open to many levels of understanding.

*Refinement of  
speech: poetry*

The refinement of the senses finds its expression in speech through poetry and sometimes in prophetic poetry, because then the sound is not of the tongue but of the heart (Śabda). It is like a well from which water is gently brought up from deep within. One becomes aware of the source only in those rare moments of surrender, stillness, and intuition at its deepest level.

*Communica-  
tion of Selves*

Here one may easily reach the Spirit, coming through the poetry, of a travel companion on that

royal highway of spiritual life. Here the aspirant is only one step away from the communication of Selves (souls), which is beyond all words.

At this point, when the senses are refined, coarse speech is a painful experience, almost unbearable. The Devī of Speech (Śakti) is word power. *Mantra is its highest expression.* The sound of the voice and the vibration of it pervade the area in which the Mantra is spoken. After some time the Mantra purifies the mind and the immediate orbit, which enlarges as time of practice continues. Finally the power of the Mantra becomes a self-generating energy. At this point it is said that the Devī, the Divine Mother, is manifest. Waves of joy and peace flood over the aspirant and a great surge of energy is experienced, expressed in most delicate, gentle feelings of devotion and surrender. The Heart is the meeting ground and some of Her Divine gifts are received here. If they are treasured and kept secret She will be most generous. But the moment the ego puts itself on the throne that belongs to Her, the "Divine love affair" is ended. To prevent this from happening, humility has to express itself naturally, devotion to Her has to be given first place, in complete surrender. This surrender is easily attained by stilling the mind to receive Her Divine "messages," your intuitive perceptions.

The Heart Lotus is your personal temple, as indeed your whole body is. Let your mind create the atmosphere, let your feelings express that mood. Be alone when you worship in your own heart. This Cakra is also called the Abode of Mercy. Mercy in feelings only is of no benefit to anyone unless this mercy is also expressed in words or actions. Mercy is forgiveness, understanding coming from the heart. As we give it, so we will receive it. There is perfect balance in the law of karma.

The Wishing Tree, the Kalpataru, is located in the Ānandakaṇḍa, which lies below the Heart Lotus. We can pick the fruit from the Wishing Tree,

*Word power  
Mantra*

*Divine  
Mother  
manifests*

*Surrender*

*Heart Lotus:  
your personal  
temple*

*Kalpataru  
(Wishing  
Tree)*



words of sweetness and truth. This miniature Lotus is regarded as being the inner courtyard to the Anāhata Cakra. It is the way of approach to the Most Holy, in an attitude of gratitude, awe, and wonder. It is symbolic of the process of discovering the Divine within, and the mysteries and awesome powers of the mind. The inner courtyard then represents the experience of the manifestation of psychic energy, while the Anāhata Cakra houses the tabernacle of the Most Holy from which the spiritual energies manifest. To this the whole chapter is devoted.

## Thoughts on Touch

### *Air and touch*

The Fourth Cakra is called the Heart Lotus. Air and touch are the particular expressions of this Cakra. The air indicates lightness; it cannot be grasped and held onto. Breathing is vital to the human life. A touch as light as breath is only possible when all self-gratification has been renounced. Grasping is different from touching.

To touch a silken cloth is to feel its softness, but to touch a piece of rock is to feel its roughness. We can think of touching the human skin, feeling the softness, warmth, and the pulsating life; or we can think of allowing someone to touch us and responding to what that touch conveys. A touching gesture can be more helpful than words in comforting someone, yet the right words can also touch one inside.

### *Touch and feeling: tamasic, rajasic, and sattvic*

“Touching” and “feeling” are interchanged in everyday language. Should they be? Touch and feelings can be seen as emotions that are being cultivated from tamasic to rajasic to sattvic. Uncultivated or tamasic touch will be rough, without awareness for the sensitivity of what is touched, be it a person or an

object. Touch is often emotionally stimulated and serves as a barometer to find out if "the touch of my hand is well-received," which conveys to me that I am accepted. So it serves my own emotional needs rather than being of a giving nature. This motivation to touch would be called tamasic. Rajasic touch would be partly the fulfillment of my needs, but there would also be a willingness and a readiness to meet the needs of the other person. The underlying factor would be my desire to accept and my need to be accepted. The most desirable touch is the sattvic approach that will give without asking anything in return, a spontaneous from-the-heart action.

*Emotional  
stimulation*

## Touch: Exercises

*I touch. The act of touching. What is touched?*

Once the aspirant begins to practice Kuṇḍalinī Yoga, small details have to be given great attention. Here in the Heart Lotus we must investigate the sense of touch as has been done with other senses in the previous three Cakras.

It is now time to check out emotional impulses to see how they have changed into refined feelings and how much still has to be done. As the process of awareness goes on, emotions change too, but sometimes more slowly. To become aware of something disturbing that one has been unaware of can trigger feelings of hurt. By the use of discrimination, as part of awareness, you can quickly discard old experiences and the desire to take revenge for them now. There is no point in getting angry now about something that occurred years back. Awareness should be a tool for a more balanced way of living. Revenge is never good, but this type is very unfair.

*Emotions  
change into  
refined  
feelings*

*Revenge*

In a dispute between parents, children should be left out and not used as objects of revenge. If a mother blesses her child by a gentle and loving touch of her hand and touches the child with her eyes, the father can turn that blessing into a curse in subtle ways. Or vice versa, the mother can turn the blessings of the father into a curse.

*Investigate  
what touch  
means to you*

- When you say that something touches your heart, what do you mean by this?
- What does it mean to be touched by a smile or a look of understanding?
- Think of being touched by the sunshine. In what ways?
- Prāṇa touches every part of your body and moves around within it. What does this mean to you?
- Is a healing touch necessarily limited to the laying on of hands? Can it be comfort in emotional desperation?
- Is there ever a time when touching people is an imposition?
- Do you consider touching an imposition when you are tired, nervous, or wish to “keep your distance” and retain privacy?
- Does fear of touching or being touched mean a fear of not measuring up?
- Does your sense of touch have a powerful influence on your moods?
- Do you like or dislike being touched and stroked by others?
- Do you use the sense of touch for differentiation and organization?
- The hands are the part of the body most used for touching. Hands build and hands destroy. Can this be related to touch and feelings?

The following exercises will be of assistance in learning more about the sense of touch and the details of this perception, which are usually given little



or no attention. The exercises are divided into theoretical and actual parts.

Theoretical:

1. What is your present perception of touch?
2. What can you touch and what can you not touch?
3. How do you relate touch to feelings and to emotions?
4. Do you really experience touch, or do you only remember? How big a part do memory and thought association play in the actual experience of touch?
5. Investigate the sense of touch in relation to the other senses. What is the influence of the other senses?

*Exercises on touch*

Actual:

The first exercise for the actual sense of touch is to hold or touch objects such as a piece of wood; metal objects, one that is smooth and one that is sharp such as a knife; a smooth stone and one that is rough; hot water and cold water; a leaf; the hair, skin, feet, face, and eyes of another person. Observe all your thoughts and reactions and carefully take note of them.

*1. Touching an object for 3 minutes*

Take a piece of perfectly clean, white cloth. Rub your hands on the cloth, saying aloud, "Dirt be removed. Dirt be removed," over and over again. The cloth will, of course, become dirty. The remembrance that it was perfectly white at one time will lead gradually to insights.

*2. Clean, white cloth*

Sit comfortably facing your partner and touch just the fingertips of your hands together. Observe all impressions, thoughts, and reactions and write them down afterwards.

*3. Touching another person's fingertips*

This exercise can also be done with each partner hold-

ing the hands close to, but not touching, the other's hands. Observe the difference.

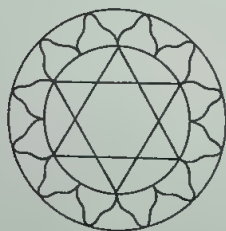
4. *Vibrations  
in body after  
chanting*

If you have the opportunity to make observations of persons while they are chanting a Mantra over a period of three hours, you will be able to feel the vibrations in different parts of their body. Place your hands lightly on the head, the neck, the shoulders, the back, at the end of an hour of chanting. Do this again at the end of two hours and again after three hours. Note how the vibrations vary in intensity and in different parts of the body.

5. *Dreams  
and the sense  
of touch*

Choose a stone and hold it in your hand when you go to sleep. Try to keep it in your hand until you awake in the morning. Observe your feelings or thoughts in connection with holding the stone and note any dreams that come from this experience. Recall dreams you have had in which the sense of touch was involved.

The insights obtained from these exercises will be more valuable than information given by someone who, through a misguided idea of helping (sentimentality), shares an experience, thereby depriving the aspirant of self-discovery. The very much needed personal experience becomes a well of strength and energy to pursue the Path.



## Powers of the Mind

Now that the foundation has been laid in the first three Cakras, some development will take its own course and bring about new experiences. Development takes place all the time, usually without the awareness and understanding of the individual. It is circumstances which force this process, which is long and slow in the ordinary course of life. The Yogi and Yoginī aim at conscious cooperation, which is like cleaning out the cupboards of the mind, taking down from the shelves old accumulated concepts that have collected dust over the years without yielding any benefits. This process makes "space" for extraordinary experiences which may be psychic or spiritual.

*Yoga:  
conscious  
cooperation*

*Extraor-  
dinary  
experiences*

When the Divine Light Invocation exercise is practiced with the utmost attention it will bring indescribable results. For instance, the aspirant may experience the body as a mass of Light, or the sudden expansion of the head or the whole body. When this happens for the first time some discomfort or even anxiety may follow, since this is something of which one has previously had only theoretical information but no personal experience. Psychic happenings are intriguing and one can easily be caught in them. How do they come about?

Everyone functions primarily through one of the five senses and it thereby becomes dominant, by choice or by circumstances. Therefore, it is through this sense, which has become trained and heightened in perception, that a psychic manifestation comes about. However, the experiences themselves are not a source of the continuous flow of energy needed to pursue further personal development. A psychic experience is seldom a strong enough inspiration to bring about continuing self-development, greater awareness, expanded consciousness. The terms "clairvoyance" and "clairaudience" mean clear sight and

*Psychic  
manifestations*



*Difference between psychic and spiritual experiences*

clear hearing, not necessarily character development.

Here in the Fourth Cakra both psychic and spiritual experiences can take place, which makes an understanding of the difference between the two a necessity. The spiritual experience is unforgettable. It cannot be repeated at will and becomes the source of energy to further one's development in becoming truly a master of self, a sustaining energy that seems to keep flowing. This is not the case with any type of manifestation of psychic energy, of which there have been repeated experiments. Psychic experiences have no particular aftereffects, except a stimulation as from anything enjoyable that one can repeat.

*Recall and observation*

Explicit recall (memory) is a practice that takes time and effort, yet it is a necessity to develop this, not only to recall dreams as precisely as possible including all details and feelings while dreaming, but also to recall events. Recall and observation go hand in hand. The yogic student should concentrate on recalling important events, particularly in regard to personal development, feelings, hunches, insights, in order to have an increase of those experiences that are valuable for understanding the mind in its various activities. To illustrate this point, if a muscle is exercised, its strength increases. If insights are acted upon, more insights (often of increasing importance) will come. Hunches and insights are evidence of increased sensitivity and when pursued will lead to a high degree of perception, by which other mental processes can also be understood and expanded.

*Memory*

Memory is increased when the aspirant is interested in the subject. Memory does not diminish with age, but age leads to differentiation of what is important to remember and what is not.

*Thought association*

Recall and observation are very important because of thought association, which is recall of the past. Together with observation in the present, one can get a clear understanding of one's reactions. A certain person's facial expression, color of hair or eyes,

type of clothes, or mannerisms, may bring back the memory of someone else and perhaps a situation connected with an entirely different person. Sometimes these thought associations are very clear and sometimes they are barely recognizable, only making their presence known by a mood that may leave the individual puzzled.

An illustration of a small incident which everyone experiences will help with the understanding of certain powers of the mind. Two persons in the same room may voice the same thing at the same time, because they had the same thought. However, most people are unfortunately only temporarily amused and do not consider the very extensive influence of the interplay of the mental forces of and by those around us. An example of this is when one finds that a friend or neighbour comes repeatedly to mind. It should not then be a surprise to be contacted by that individual. If observation has been practiced, many such things will already have emerged. These qualities of mind are present in everyone. One can become aware of these abilities, increase them, and finally exercise them in a conscious way.

The yogic practices leading to awareness and control of the mind, keeping the mind single-pointed, receptive, and on the Most High, lead to such mental powers as clairaudience and clairvoyance. Telepathic communication between Guru and disciple is not at all unusual. Only when we do not pay any attention to what happens do we think that some people are gifted with phenomenal powers in these areas, which from a yogic point of view are quite common. We do not see anything phenomenal in such contact between a mother and child or a husband and wife.

What makes the manifestation of these mental powers so unusual is that the merry-go-round of the conversations in the mind has been stopped. The energy that keeps the merry-go-round going is easily traced back to self-justification, self-glorification, and

*Common powers of the mind*

*Control of mind leads to mental powers*

self-gratification. This kind of wrong preoccupation with self is a great stumbling block. *The still, small voice is drowned out by the merry-go-round of the mind.* Flashes of awareness, flashes of insight, moments of inspiration, are brief because the space is already filled to capacity.

*Ask questions  
and listen  
within*

Let us ask questions and listen to the answers from within:

- Do the cells of the body have a consciousness of their own?
- What triggers in the mind memory of a pain or a need?
- Is the mind the manager, assuming authority by suggestion, by determination, by self-hypnosis?
- What makes up the many details and events of our lives?
- Who else would be responsible for the interplay of these forces?

*Technological  
inventions*

In technological inventions man has recreated his own abilities with greater accuracy and a wider range of functioning than he has discovered in himself. It is doubtful that man could invent anything that is not in some way already existing in himself. He could only invent the camera because of the example of his own eyes. Television could not have been developed if the mind had not shown it was possible. The greatest obstacle to self-discovery is lack of mental discipline. The concentration exercises aimed at single-pointedness of mind should have a superior position in the daily schedule. The ability to surrender opinions, preconceived ideas, means being able to relax the mind. To achieve a state of mind that is truly relaxed one has to begin on the physical level. Body and mind will relax simultaneously in steps when supported by breathing exercises, which create the necessary conditions for complete relaxation. This state of relaxation and receptivity of the mind is a

*Surrender  
of opinions,  
preconceived  
ideas*



necessary prerequisite for obtaining the awareness of spiritual inspiration which will provide the spring to nourish continued development.

## Mind: Doubt

Doubts, like clouds, sail on the mental horizon occasionally. They can be dark and heavy or small and wispy. Sometimes they disappear, but often return unnoticed because of an influx of new experiences. The mind, often not able to deal with experiences of psychic or spiritual content, is tempted to premature assessment which contributes to doubt. It is wise to suspend all judgment and wait things out.

*Suspend  
judgment*

A record should now be kept, giving as many details as possible of any unusual experiences. *Spiritual practice is a positive way to clear doubts.* Then limitations created by doubt will be only temporary, not binding, if we do not insist on drawing conclusions from incomplete observations.

*Keep records*

Doubt can be healthy or destructive, depending on the attitude of the aspirant. If doubt is destructive it can result in a depressive mood; it can open the back door to allow escape from the previously assumed responsibility and commitment. Impatience and restlessness create doubt, but the aspirant is warned that both prevent certain spiritual powers from developing. Remember that impatience is an expression of arrogance of some sort which, if allowed to linger, will undermine faith, hope, and will, and only strengthen the moods of depression. Arrogance is of the ego and is therefore destructive.

*Doubt:  
healthy or  
destructive*

Healthy doubt stimulates questioning which allows expansion of awareness and a widening of horizons on which the sun of spiritual life will continue to rise.

Every now and then the wind of imagination

creates waves on the surface of the waters of the mind and the boat is rocked by doubt. But persistence to follow the set course will give strength to weather the storm. Each victory then becomes a new source of strength from which one can draw when another storm arises. But one also learns to keep more and more control on emotions and imagination, thus the waves lose their power in due time. Faith thereby becomes a self-generating energy that is at one's disposal when needed. Faith practiced becomes strengthened.

## Mind: Observation

*Personal  
knowing gives  
self-reliance*

There is power in knowledge, one's personal knowing, which is inner wisdom. The process of attaining that wisdom is a long one on the Path of Kuṇḍalinī Yoga. Concentration on ideals, keeping the mind fixed on these qualities, together with daily reflection and straight-walk thinking, will lead to that wisdom. It is necessary to be able to break away from the herd, free oneself of the conditioning of upbringing, and stand alone on one's two feet, responsible only to the inner authority. The practice of straight-walk thinking, getting straight to the point, while reflecting on the events of the day, then using the spiritual diary to record these observations, helps in the process of becoming self-reliant.

*Inner know-  
ing of a  
greater Power*

Man's unexplainable desire to believe in the occult, religion or mysticism may stem from an inner knowing that there is a Power greater, creating the tantalizing question—where did I really come from?—who am I?

*Perception of  
finer forces*

During sleep, sensations are perceived on a different level of consciousness. They seem to emanate from a plane of finer forces. All spiritual practice aims at sensitizing our gross senses so that we can become

aware of these finer forces. We must not be in a hurry to allow the gross mind to translate the perception into something understandable just for the sake of mental security.

One way to increase that perception is to use the imagination and bring Light into the Heart Lotus, which is situated in the spine just above the physical heart. If you have a Guru, it will now be possible to reach a level of intuitive perceptions when, by first invoking and then projecting the inner Light, the personality of the Guru disappears and the listener perceives only what comes through the Light.

*Perceptions  
through the  
Light*

As a result of the sensitizing and refinement of the senses and the practice of control of the energies thus revealed, an energy field around the body can be produced which is strong enough to prevent the passerby from seeing the physical presence. In other words, "A" can produce an energy field strong enough to become invisible to "B." It is like jamming a radio station with an interfering overlay of sound. The body of "A" does not actually disappear, but the state of mind of "B" is being affected like a person in shock who cannot clearly see or think. The senses are temporarily out of order.

*Energy field  
around the  
body*

The creation, use, and control of the energy in the energy field and its increase become understood during periods of practice.

*Control of  
energy field*

MIND IS A MINIATURE UNIVERSE  
UNIVERSE IS THE EXPANSION OF THE MIND.

Control of mind means control of thoughts.

- Can you change the pattern of your thoughts?
- Do you have thoughts that are self-destructive?
- If so, can you subdue them?
- By what means?

*Control of  
mind, of  
thoughts*

Thoughts are reproductive, like seeds.

- What kind of thoughts do you want to plant in your mind?



*Having the  
same thoughts  
as another*

Become aware when you and another person have the same thoughts. Try to find out how this came about and observe if these influences can be brought about at will. Watch how you do it.

*Drawing  
power of mind*

Mind has a drawing power.

—Where does your mind draw you?

—Does it draw you to something desirable and uplifting?

—Does it take you beyond the physical-emotional level?

—to the Self, over the mind?

*Memory  
exercises:*

To practice recall of different states of mind:

—When do I have these states of mind?

—At what time?

*States of mind*

—What are the cycles of my mind?

—Have I had any hunches?

—What is the difference between hunches and intuitive perception?

*Promises*

Think about promises:

—What are the promises I have made to other people?

—Have I fulfilled them?

—What are the promises I have made to myself?

*Dream recall*

Watch any aspects of today, the past or the future in your dreams. Write down what you recall of dreams you had three months or six months ago and compare them with your original notes.

The dreamless state was referred to in the Third Cakra.

—Now watch yourself falling asleep.

—Can you take an active part in this?

—Can you redirect your dreams or stop an unpleasant dream?

—Watch how you do this.

Now consider your moods:

*Moods*

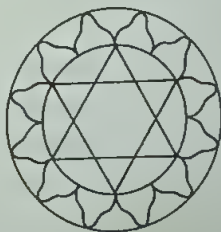
- Watch your moods three times a day and record.
- Assess your mood—10 the lowest, 100 the highest.
- See what your cycles are.
- Compare surrendering to a mood with resisting one.
- Observe moods, thoughts, and habits.
- Recognize the difference between habitual and spontaneous responses connected with the mood.
- Recall how this happens.
- Spontaneous responses have to be watched like the habitual ones, three times a day.

Catch the stimulations of the moment.

*Moments*

- Separate ordinary events from . . .  
inspirations (of a Divine nature).

Mind has to be controlled in order to free it from its own inherent doubts. They create the need for security. Oversimplification and reluctance to reach beyond the ordinary have put reason and logic on the throne from generation to generation. This emphasis has become a self-perpetuating indulgence to meet the demands for security. It has kept people comfortable and so it has prevented the expansion of old limits and thereby the discovery of new territory and new possibilities.



# Mind: Energy Manifest

## *Divine Mother Śakti*

In *The Glory of Divine Mother* Mother Śakti is described:

*I am a gross body, a subtle body, a causal body—I am myself Turīya Caitanya—I am in all. I am all aspects of Māyā—I am with attributes—Māyā; I am without attributes—beyond Māyā.*

*Deva: male  
Devī: female*

Femininity and masculinity exist wherever there is creation. The Śāstras (scriptural Texts) call the male *the Deva* and the female *the Devī*, in accordance with the male and female principle in all fathers and mothers in the world. Energy *per se* is symbolized in the male aspect. Energy manifest is symbolized in the female aspect.

*Great Mother*

Śakti is the Great Mother. In glory She surpasses a father at all times. Mother Śakti holds the child, the seeker, the aspirant in Her womb, which is the world. She nourishes the child with Divine Nectar, which brings the child back to Mother, after the enjoyment of the play of Māyā.

*Approach to  
the Devī*

All practice in Kuṇḍalinī Yoga must be understood as an approach to the DEVĪ. Śakti is the origin of all. Śakti is the source. Whatever one worships and admires, it is Śakti. She is the form, the ideal, power—the GODDESS of the SPOKEN WORD. It is for this reason that the Śakti is also life, breath—existence itself. Śakti is one power becoming many. All that is manifest has an innate power that is from the same source. There is one sun having many rays. All rays emanate from the same source.

*Śakti-power*

In order to understand Śakti-power it is necessary that one recognize power in its most simple manifestations. Electricity is a familiar energy. It is easy to focus the mind on its physical forms such as a light, a heater, or a running motor. When the mind has

*Familiar  
example of  
energy*



to focus on the electrical power itself, without the familiar gadgets, the difficulties become quickly apparent. Even an abstract symbol is not the power itself.

The light and the heater can be seen as concrete symbols of electricity. The mind needs a particular training to understand beyond the symbols. The difficulties become apparent when one practices thinking of oneself without the body or face. Yet we are familiar with ourselves and often even quite emphatic about what we know of ourselves.

We can use these illustrations and carry them a step further. To understand terms like "God," the "Absolute," "Cosmic Energy," special training and new experiences are necessary. How can one otherwise overcome the old familiar process of creating and re-creating the Absolute or God in one's own image and even adding human characteristics to it, however perfect these may be.

In Eastern thought God is understood as Energy manifesting in many aspects. The mind and its many possible manifestations are an expression of that one power, Energy.

The process of thinking is an energy process. How much energy is used to produce a thought? Where does one take it from? When thought is put into action, combined with emotion, we use the terms "energy expenditure," "emotional investment," and so on, because we can "measure" our "energy output" by our feelings of tiredness or exhaustion. In order to understand the Śakti-power, it is necessary to list all the different faculties of the mind. What about telepathy and hypnosis? How do they come about? Can this be done at will?

What is the Śakti-power that is at work in the mind? Before the term "phenomenon" can be used, the heightened power of perception should be considered. This is what the practicing Yogi develops in regard to the senses. To truly heighten perception one condition is necessary—the clearing of one's con-

*Understanding  
Cosmic  
Energy*

*Energy of  
the mind*

*Energy of  
thought  
process*

*Heightened  
perception*

science. Otherwise, much energy is bound up and that hypersensitive state cannot be attained.

*The human  
body*

The human body would be another good illustration of the many manifestations of one source. There is one body with its many manifestations and very different expressions: eyes see, tongue tastes, feet walk, blood flows. Within these gross manifestations there are minute details of each limb, organ, cell, yet in spite of the "individual expression" of each, the power emanates or is drawn from one source that we call life force.

*Eternal es-  
sence remains*

Sand castles do not last; they become sand again. But only the form is destroyed—the essence (sand) remains to be formed again.

It must be understood that these are all oversimplified illustrations and that each aspirant has to do his or her own "straight-walk thinking." In all areas each aspirant has to draw conclusions that are personally meaningful.

*Mental  
acrobatics*

For a long time, the need of substituting a concrete symbol for an abstract idea has to be accepted. This kind of mental acrobatics is very helpful and will lead naturally to a point where it is no longer necessary.

Anything that is manifested takes on a life of its own. Therefore, the individual is responsible for every thought, word, and action that he or she produces, and this increases at each level of consciousness.

*Powers of  
Mother Śakti*

The four Powers of Divine Mother Śakti are:

1. MAHEŚVARĪ—preciousness—comprehending wisdom, majesty, greatness.
2. MAHĀKĀLĪ—strength—will—irresistible passion.
3. MAHĀLAKṢMĪ—harmony—secrecy—compelling attraction—seriousness.
4. MAHĀSARASVATĪ—perfection—intimate knowledge.

Śakti's power is the manifestation of the microcosmos as well as the macrocosmos.

To use the power of Divine Mother Śakti for one's own purposes is to enslave it to the ego. Greed has no limitations. This is an important area that needs to be given attention in daily reflection. ("God, Divine Mother, provide everything for me from a parking place to a fat increase in salary.") Such thinking backfires badly at a later time when this attitude is already forgotten.

*Greed*

Śakti is all the Power there is to be experienced. She is called the Devī of Speech, the whisper that is in every illusion. She is also the thunder of the Cosmic voice. The two extreme gifts that one can obtain from Divine Mother are Her Māyā (continuous illusion) and Liberation from the bondage of all illusion. Each human experience is at some point on the sweep between these extremes of Māyā and Liberation. The movement of every human life shows the intermingling of countless possibilities. Only by a decisive act of will can we stop running all over the place. Remember, by the manifestation of Her power is this whole universe set in motion—revolving, moving constantly. On the Path to Liberation from illusion, the relationship of the aspirant to Divine Mother must be built on the firm foundation of good character, self-discipline, and a faith that ever deepens. Eventually, when this faith is no longer blind, the aspirant knows within the heart the presence of Divine Mother, and an intimate play of forces follows, which no verbalization can truly express. The description "Living in Divine Mother's Grace" fits perfectly.

*Māyā and  
Liberation*

*Relationship  
of aspirant to  
Divine  
Mother*

As long as the aspirant keeps the contact with Her, She will take care of Her Divine child with a love and a tenderness unknown before. Life takes on a new meaning.

The kind of life one decides to live is up to



*Choice of  
life the  
aspirant's  
decision*

the individual. After obtaining Her Grace an aspirant may not want to grow more into Her Light, but may desire to resume the previous activities but with another dimension. Yet, an aspirant having once tasted Her Divine nectar may become an inspiration to others and continue to expand in the desire for a higher state of consciousness. Another may perfectly surrender to Her and desire nothing more than to be led by Her, wherever She takes Her Divine child (servant).

If She is wanted for Herself, all illusion comes to an end, and so does pain. It sounds easy and yet it seems to be, and really is, a constant battle against the stream of life. Life is not to be rejected, but to be transformed.

The last illusion is Śakti Herself.

## Mind and Healing

*Compassion is  
the basis for  
healing*

The power of healing attracts many aspirants. When the aspirant has gained control over the emotions and cultivated them into finer feelings, compassion will be allowed, in due time, to find true expression. When one desires to help because help is needed, rather than for rewards of any kind or for sentimental reasons, this desire has the right basis. It is far more likely that a healing will take place when motivated by noble feelings such as compassion. However, many more aspects come into both success and failure in healing.

*Divine Light  
Invocation*

If the aspirant has become aware of the power of the Divine Light Invocation, the interplay of forces is recognized. This contributes a great deal to understanding the functioning of the processes which are needed to gain conscious control of various energies. Opinions, concepts, beliefs are all loosened up through the practice of the Divine Light Invocation,

gradually becoming ethereal as the firmness dissolves into Light. This is more than increased flexibility. Do not miss the subtlety that is expressed by the word "light." Meanings of words will become more and more elusive. This is inevitable when more subtle regions are reached.

When one desires healing for oneself or others, a few questions come up about the energies involved:

- Does healing have anything to do with the mind?  
or with the heart? What is it that heals?
- Is another person needed to assist healing?
- Does one have healing power within oneself?

*Questions  
concerning  
healing*

By asking numerous questions and trying to find the answers we grow in understanding.

When healing is being considered, the healer must find out how the illness came about. If there has been a continuous violation of some physical principles which has led to the breakdown of health, spiritual healing might be successful only once, if at all. In this case, the person should be properly instructed in taking care of the body and observing the laws under which it will stay healthy. If these are neglected, trust in spiritual healing will be weakened both in the healer and in the one who is ill. It is rare that illness is sudden. It is more likely that preoccupation of the mind with other concerns has been too intense, so that early signs of breakdowns in the body have gone unnoticed. Pain is a great teacher, and illness is often the only way to become truly grateful for health and to see the healthy body as a precious instrument that should be well taken care of.

*Fundamental  
principles*

*Need for care  
of the body*

The attitude of the sick person might be a reason why spiritual healing could not take place. It could fail if there were no will to live, no purpose to life which would give the impetus, or if the purpose had not been grasped, or if the person believed that he

*Reasons for  
failure*

or she was too great a sinner to deserve to be healed. Add to this all the psychological advantages of love and attention that go with being ill, and it becomes obvious that there could be little or nothing to promote healing.

*Mental and  
emotional  
preparation*

*Inspiration of  
healer*

*Feelings of  
gratitude  
necessary*

*Healing: an  
interplay of  
forces*

*Spiritual  
factor*

So the mental and emotional preparation of ill persons is very important. This means that there has to be real concern, not sentiment, to help them to help themselves and to understand some aspects of their predicament. There has to be the cooperation of the desire to be well and the will to live a purposeful life. The healer has to inspire and reinforce these positive thoughts. Emotions, which have been discussed at great length in the Maṇipūra Cakra, play a very important part in the healer and the ill person. There have to be cultivated emotions, feelings of deep gratitude on the part of the person being healed for regained health and on the part of the healer for the privilege of being a channel. Gratitude, being one of the finest of human feelings, plays an important part in the practice and the results.

Is healing a power of the mind? Or is healing by Divine Grace?

Looking at the various powers of the mind, it becomes obvious that there is no simple and direct answer. Illness is a combination or, to use a now familiar term, an interplay of forces. The genuine concern of the healer can be a subtle suggestion, or, if there is a powerful personality involved, it can be a powerful suggestion, which will lift the self-image and infuse new hope into a purposeless life. This regenerates the healing forces that are in every individual. Confidence, trust, hope, and will to live, and the view of a goal or purpose are some of the basic principles involved. As a plant needs certain conditions to grow, so the human "plant," when its basic requirements are met, will grow into a normal healthy human being.

It is now necessary to see that there is another factor in healing that we will call spiritual. The process



of life itself, be it a plant, an animal or a human being, is still an unanswered mystery. A healer is a person who has an awareness and perception of those forces that promote healing or correct what is detrimental to health. This awareness makes it possible for the healer to let this Energy flow through and direct it to the person who is in need of additional Energy that will correct the weakness in the body.

*Healer directs  
the flow of  
Energy*

The Divine Light Invocation has the proper combination of all that is necessary to bring about a healing, either spontaneously or by repetition. In the practice of the Divine Light Invocation there has to be a true feeling of compassion and total involvement on the part of the healer, which communicates itself to the sick person. Sometimes psychological problems have to be removed first, and there has to be a healing in the mind before a healing can take place in the body. It is essential that the healer refrain from determining how the healing should take place in order for the Divine Light to flow and set in motion what is necessary for a particular individual. Geographical distance need not be a barrier to healing. The ill person may be 3,000 miles away, but our old space/time concept should not prevent us from attempting to help.

At the moment when the needy person is deeply relaxed and in a state of surrender (perhaps because of weakness) he or she becomes receptive and thereby allows the Energy to flow and do its work. The healer must observe and understand the state of surrender and deep relaxation. If such a state cannot be achieved while awake, it will naturally take place when the individual falls asleep. In the following two hours when there is a dropping from the conscious level to the unconscious, the body is extremely receptive to repeated suggestions of healing directed toward its own resources. This in itself may lead to healing in some cases.

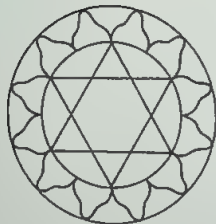
*Receptivity in  
a state of  
surrender*

The efforts described may have to be repeated

over a period of from one to three months. It must be realized that in some circumstances healing may not be best for the whole person. The Divine Light cannot be told what to do, but immeasurable benefits will be derived whatever the visible results.

*Power of faith  
and hope*

The power of faith and hope should not be underestimated. They are also energy which can be increased with concern and involvement through the Divine Light Invocation.



# Thoughts on Humility and Gratitude

Humility and gratitude go hand in hand. The feeling of gratitude is an interaction between the mind and the body. Both will benefit from it. Awareness increases so that we become grateful for everything we are given. We have to learn, literally learn, to be grateful for what we receive day by day, simply to balance the criticism that, day by day, we voice because of powerful emotions. When the question of initiation came up for a certain young man, my Guru said that he would not consider it because this young fellow was not grateful for what he had already got, therefore he should have no more.

In Buddhist tradition the aspirant gives 100,000 prostrations to develop humility—a virtue that is thus expressed appropriately through the body. Some people will say, “But I feel I have gratitude and humility, so what is wrong?” You may think and feel you have gratitude, but if you never express it, does it have any meaning?

When you have helped a friend over and over again, but no gratitude has ever been expressed, you may wonder what you are doing and if you are wasting your time and energy. But perhaps you are unable to recognize your friend’s love and gratitude because they are not expressed according to your expectations—because your friend’s spontaneous expression of those feelings is not an echo of your own. Then we enter into playing games. A good sense of discrimination is necessary to see through all the tricks our mind and emotions play.

What else can one do to cultivate gratitude and humility? The East Indians use the worship of the Guru, which appeals only to some people. But this act of worship has very good psychology behind it.

*Learning to be grateful*

*Balancing criticism*

*Developing humility in Buddhist tradition*

*Expectations*

*Worship of the Guru*



People have an inborn desire to admire and worship. They look for an example after which they can mold themselves. False gods such as success, food, sex, possessions, unproven beliefs, and personal convictions are often worshipped until there is an awakening to their emptiness.

*The marvel of  
the human  
body*

Another way to develop gratitude is to truly look at yourself, see the marvel of this human body and the intricacy of the sensitive organs. Be grateful to have the full use of your senses through which you perceive all that is around you, the world and the beauties of nature. Appreciate the strong body and the state of good health you enjoy.

What has been said so far only scratches the surface. It is meant to stimulate your mind into the kind of thinking from which you will benefit. The mind is always so active scheming to fulfill selfish desires that those shy and modest thoughts of gratitude and humility get pushed into the background. We allow the mind to be stimulated by all sorts of things that often prove to be useless, even detrimental, to our mental and emotional well-being. Thoughtlessly we establish bad habits and allow those to remain, then cry when we experience the pain of our own carelessness. We even interpret this as an unfair destiny, entirely missing the point that we have laid our own traps and we have to take responsibility for those acts. In the course of life there are many little "miracles" but our hearts are so hardened that we don't pay any attention, instead we take things for granted. Yet we never allow anyone to take us for granted. When this happens, we protest loudly.

*Bad habits*

*Prayers to all  
Buddhas and  
all Gurus*

The lengthy prayers to all Gurus and all Buddhas fulfill this function—the cultivation of the finer feelings and the acknowledgement to those who have paved the way and share their hard-won experiences with us, helping us to gain insights and to travel the narrow road with faith and endurance, in humility and gratitude.

## Additional Thoughts on Sex

The process of cultivation and developing quality in regard to sex, which has already been pointed out in the First Cakra, now has to reach a level of refinement where neither partner becomes demanding and where the commitment to each other is clear. With the grosser emotions refined into true feelings, sex must become an expression of love and an ability to surrender to each other. In other words, all that has been practiced can now be synthesized.

*Refinement of  
quality in sex*

A married couple meditating together is coming together on a different level, even if the image of meditation is not the same. The Divine Light Invocation can be supportive because, with continued practice of it, the gross image of the body and identification with it are diffused. It may become the underlying thought that in the surrendering of the sex act, Light blends into Light. This would indicate that, with all possessiveness and self-gratification gone, there is a real giving, and a receptivity to each other.

*Meditating  
together*

The mistake that is very easily made by an aspirant is seeing the powerful life force only in extremes—from simple survival of the species to the mystical marriage (of Yoga and religions). An attitude like this entirely misses a wide range of differences in experience. If the enjoyment of sex were compared to the enjoyment of food, it would be like the creativity that goes into the preparation of a meal. This brings enjoyment for the eyes, for the nose, for the touch when it is eaten by hand, as well as for the taste. If it is cooked with a deep feeling of love and concern for the health of those who will partake of it, and if it is presented in an attractive way, the table decked with candles and flowers, it becomes a festive occasion. The enjoyment goes far beyond simply filling the body needs.

*Perception of  
the life force*

In the sexual area, we can see that the important

activity that also brings another human life into being has to be given the same care and attention as the preparation and enjoyment of food.

*Psychic connotations of sex*

We must look at sex, besides being a procreative force, in its psychic connotations. Since no human activity can be isolated, in a sexual relationship each partner is affected on all levels, from the purely physical to the psychic. On the mental level, the interplay of forces between two minds has already been pointed out.

*Western over-emphasis on sex*

In Western culture, there is an unnatural over-emphasis on sex. Orgasm is not the ultimate goal of human beings. The woman's point of view is naturally different from the man's because of the fact that she is the bearer of children and has the greater burden and responsibility.

*Woman's viewpoint for yogic life*

So the woman's viewpoint on sex in a yogic life has to be re-evaluated. Additional offspring can be a great hindrance at a certain point in her yogic life, particularly if she has done her so-called "duty" to society. She may find it extremely difficult, if not impossible, to serve two masters and will therefore have to resign herself to limit her spiritual activity, for a certain time, to increased self-development. This, however, will then provide the foundation for later spiritual life, provided that she has made herself emotionally independent of the male. That emotional independence is, in any case, a desirable basis for any male-female relationship.

*Emotional independence*

There is an additional problem that the householder Yogin or Yoginī has to face in the West because of the social setup of the single family unit. In many other human societies the whole family, several generations, lives together and the children are accepted by everyone. So, if one parent were to take a few hours a day for several weeks or months to do a particular work or spiritual practice, the children would not suffer. Even so, men and women of the



East postpone more intense spiritual practice until the middle or later years of their lives when the young members of their family no longer need them.

It cannot be stressed enough that for the Yogi or Yoginī sex is not a sin, as it is often seen in the West.

The Divine union is an ongoing evolution and, as such, in some lifetime the decision has to be made to cooperate with this process. This does not mean a hindrance or discouragement in the development of intellectual or mental powers. On the contrary, the whole system of Yoga is one of cooperation with the evolution of the human being in all phases of life.

Kuṇḍalinī Yoga offers an equal opportunity to any man or woman who is willing to pursue that Path.

*Divine  
union:  
an ongoing  
evolution*

## Thoughts on Brahmacharyā (Celibacy)

The many functions of sex have been discussed in the Cakras and in each the horizons and levels of meaning have been expanded. The symbolism of the Cakras shows the change of meaning, and it has already been pointed out that brahmacharyā (celibacy) is not a moral issue with the practicing Yogi or Yoginī, but a matter of choice. A quick review would be in order. First energy is expressed through sex for the purpose of procreation. Then the energy is expressed in art or invention or in healing. Without energy, neither our thought processes nor any of our senses would function. We have seen that even mechanicalness uses energy. But let us not give in to the natural temptation of classification. Energy cannot be put into a pigeonhole.

*Review of the  
functions of  
sex*

*Attachment to  
sense  
perceptions*

Through the process of clarification, the aspirant will have observed the attachment to all our sense perceptions to which we give such weight that they dominate our lives. Attachment to anything is binding, preventing one from seeking something else outside of the habitual thoughts and actions. Sex is not excluded from this. Attachment to sex and its pleasures, and the enormous energy that goes into defending the attachment to those pleasures, would be worth a scientific investigation.

*Investigate old  
Teachings*

The path of brahmacaryā is only for the very few who will set aside a period of three or four years to thoroughly investigate the truth in the old Teachings to see if there is any point in pursuing this new path, this new outlook on life. Most people are only willing to allot that amount of time to accomplish something more tangible and ego-pleasing, more emotionally satisfying.

*Objection to  
celibacy*

The objection that celibacy, in those religions where it is practiced, has not brought any outstanding results, but often the contrary, points again to mechanicalness. It is like the repetition of a Mantra, whose power will indeed manifest if it is recited with the right attitude, concentration, and understanding of the purpose to be achieved. Similarly, celibacy must be practiced with the right motivation to give sufficient support for the times of temptation that are bound to come. What makes brahmacaryā meaningful is not the moral implication, but the aspirant's active participation in the process of spiritual evolution.

*Householder  
aspirant*

The necessary division of the duties and responsibilities of a householder do not allow the practice of brahmacaryā unless the offspring have reached a certain age and there is a mutual agreement between the partners. This is a complicated situation and for this reason Gurus have discouraged the combining of family life with yogic life when the goal is the pursuit of a higher state of consciousness. It is difficult

enough to attain a true state of brahmacaryā, not only on the physical-emotional level, but also on the mental level.

The cultivation of imagination and desires has been thoroughly dealt with in the first three Cakras. In order to practice brahmacaryā successfully, this groundwork has to be done and the goal has to be set.

*Groundwork  
and goal  
necessary*

Psychic powers, which can perhaps be little goals along the way, are also not attained without the necessary exercises to bring about certain physical-emotional-mental conditions. If a magician needs years of practice to perfect his act, then the sharpening and refinement of sense perception that allow the unusual manifestations called psychic must be given at least an equal amount of time. The moment psychic energy is experienced, not just intellectualized, the whole world appears on quite a different level. Anybody who has given the time and effort required for three or four years of intense practice knows this to be true. Only those who are blind would deny the existence of the sun.<sup>4</sup>

Brahmacaryā is not easy, and without the help of a teacher experience has shown that this decision seldom lasts more than two years, because of the lack of other supportive exercises which are necessary to keep control of the expression of the various senses and their gratification.

*Teacher  
necessary*

It must be recognized that at a certain stage of spiritual life an authority is needed, not to cater to dependency, but simply because the Guru knows what the disciple does not know, but wants to learn. The Guru becomes an authority by that fact.

*Authority of  
the Guru*

Spiritual practice and authority will very slowly lead to self-reliance and freedom from the pressures of the senses. Without proper discrimination and knowledge, freedom cannot be handled. Release from any kind of attachment will therefore only be possible

*Learning to  
handle  
freedom*



in the proportion to which the individual has learned to cope with freedom. Learning in all areas, I would like to remind you, is a process. The process of learning in Kuṇḍalinī Yoga is interwoven with awareness, observation, reflection, discrimination, and the practical application of all these things.



## Thoughts on Worship

Worship for the aspirant can be symbolized by growing white flowers as a reminder of the purity one wishes to attain. Blue flowers may be grown if the color blue means spirituality to the individual, if in moments of quiet, blue lights have been experienced. The meaning of the color should be very definite for the individual. Grow flowers of a color that is for you symbolic of purity and the Most High. If you desire to unfold like a lotus, grow these plants, and when you care for them, think that you are looking after your own development.

*Growing  
flowers as a  
symbol*

Bring this attitude into all areas of your daily life. Beware of mechanicalness and routine. When making beds, think of straightening out the wrinkles in your mind, smoothing out your thoughts. When you light a candle, think of all the meanings associated with the Light. Think that people you have formerly considered primitive, such as fire worshippers, were in reality worshipping the Greater Light. This brings appreciation for other forms of worship.

*Worship in  
daily life*

The aspirant is warned not to allow worship to become dependency in the garb of tradition and authority. Worship must also have its evolutionary processes. That needs a thorough investigation. The almost inborn tendency to worship is obvious in the worship of power. This can be seen in the lives of all revolutionaries, who are first called murderers destroying an old power structure, but then when they are successful and attain to power in their own way, they have the admiration of those same people who criticized them.

*Dependency  
on tradition*

We no longer worship many gods and goddesses, with the numerous rituals and ceremonies of the old religions, and we smile about the accuracy with which such rituals and ceremonies are performed. We think it is pagan, or at least outdated,

*Symbols and  
rituals*

but we seldom stop to consider that symbols are still used. Only their expression has changed and now we worship personalities or offices.

Worship as performed with intricate rituals and ceremonies has to be understood on the same variety of levels that we can still see today in some of the Christian faiths. The simple person, for example, feels much closer to St. Anthony than to Jesus or God. The more developed is able to accept St. Anthony, but is closer to Jesus. The next stage would be seeing the saints and Jesus as a steppingstone to God as Supreme Being. Finally, it takes a person with quite a different mind to accept a Cosmic Intelligence no longer put into a shape and form that have been created by the human mind.

*Realization of  
the Self*

Once we have advanced to this point, we recognize that all these other ways of worship lead away from the realization of the Self. Let us then use worship to cultivate the senses, to escalate the mind, and to achieve greater perception to discover the Divine within. The fire or sun worshipper is doing the same thing, being on the evolutionary path toward the Divine Light without color.

This is not to deny the value of developing human virtues, but for too long we have been conditioned to avoid carefully the discovery of the Divine within. Only a few have had enough rebellious spirit to break their dependency on the authority of established religion and make that discovery.

*The Guru as  
a symbol*

The aspirant, then, is warned against taking a Guru who will strengthen the bonds of dependency for too long. The true Guru's purpose is to set the devotee free. The Guru can only be seen as a symbol for the cultivation of the senses and, therefore, be worshipped or adored for only a certain length of time. Swami Sivananda sent away after 20 years a disciple who did not want to be independent.

The Heart Lotus is the place of the crossroads where the aspirant has to make a decision that every-



thing in life must now be subservient to the pursuit of the Goal, and where the actual worship of a Guru will dissolve in the tabernacle of one's own heart into the Guru within. Such an experience takes place when the disciple has accepted responsibility.

*The Guru  
within*

Certain levels of achievement may take lifetimes, but a disciple who has doubts will see that bonds dissolve in the Light, almost by themselves, at the right time. Again let us take an illustration from ordinary life. The baby learns to walk, clinging tightly to the mother's finger. When it has gained enough self-confidence from the practice of walking and the process of learning, there comes a moment when the baby of its own accord will let go of the mother's finger. What a great triumph the baby experiences and how it cherishes the joy of this demonstration and the delight of those around it! The true Guru is in the same position with the disciple (devotee) who, having had the encouragement of the Guru all along the way, will know when the moment of independence has come. At this point timetables no longer need to be checked by the Guru, nor all questions answered. The disciple finds that answers are within. The increasing awareness of the disciple makes it clear where it is necessary to take action. Before this time, the ego, every now and then, may interfere and make the disciple wish to be free of the Guru's authority. Any such premature wish is of the ego. Daily reflection, in conjunction with the Divine Light Invocation, will develop the light of understanding in the disciple clearly enough to know when that time has come. *But let us not be foolish and let go the attachment and the dependency to the Guru before all other attachments are taken care of.* That sacred relationship will dissolve into Divine Light. It does not need any conscious separation.

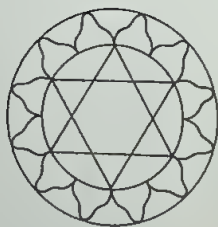
*Bonds with  
the Guru  
dissolve in  
the Light*

Worship is not done for the benefit of a God or a Guru, but simply for the spiritual aspirant to recognize his or her level of development. Worship

makes a great contribution, particularly when it is allowed to grow out of the individual temperament and cultivation of all senses. Traditional worship and ceremonies that have become meaningless to an aspirant are certainly not encouraged, but by individual inclinations, each aspirant should develop worship personally.

*The use of  
flowers and  
candles*

Either in your garden or in your house you can have a special place with white flowers or white candles for a spiritual idea such as Śiva or the Absolute, and have colorful flowers with colorful candles, symbolic for Śakti, the Divine Mother. Searching for the right plant or even seed, caring for and nurturing the flowers, all this activity will help cultivate feelings and the mind. Reflecting on these symbols, intentionally lifting them to higher levels, is a beautiful process of worship.



## Synthesis of Exercises for the Anāhata Cakra

The aspirant has been given many details and carefully outlined steps for exercises in connection with each Cakra. Here, for the first time, is a synthesis for the Anāhata Cakra. That step must also be done by the aspirant for all other Cakras, then finally for the whole path of Kuṇḍalinī from the First to the Sixth, the Ājñā Cakra. All the symbols that have been helpful in giving directions are now changing levels of meaning.

*Necessity for  
synthesis*

In the Fourth Cakra the aspirant is at the crossroads. A large portion of the work has been done and the changes in the aspirant may have resulted in attracting different people, people of like mind who offer support. At this point it will be necessary to review ideals to discover if some require refining and escalating from what was originally established. Others may need more intensive application. This can be accomplished with the help of a review of the daily diary which has become a valuable chart of your progress and development. This process of evaluation will provide the base for laying out the next step on your Path. Special care must now be taken in applying your new awareness to daily life. You will notice changes that have taken place in your self-image and thus recognize your ability to develop in the directions you have decided upon. This recognition can provide the enthusiasm needed for your continued development.

*The  
crossroads*

*Review of:  
ideals  
diary  
self-image*

A question that may be appropriate at this particular stage of development is "What is a true friend?" What would be the characteristics of a person that a seeker can call "my best friend"? As a starting point, one can ask what were the characteristics of your best friend up to this point.

*What is a  
friend?*



*Friends of the  
past*

- Somebody to do things with? . . . see a movie . . .  
listen to a concert. . . . ?
- Someone with whom little favors were exchanged?
- Someone to talk about the job or business with?
- Someone in whom comfort or sympathy could be  
found?

At this crossroads it may now appear that those characteristics of friendship are no longer sufficient and perhaps the friend of the past is in fact no more than a very good acquaintance. So, the list of characteristics of one's best friend would look quite different now.

*What quali-  
ties do you  
now need in a  
friend?*

- Acceptance, discussion, and support of:
- ideas that specifically come up in spiritual life.
  - times of uncertainty and doubt.
  - temporary instability.
  - continuous questioning and searching.

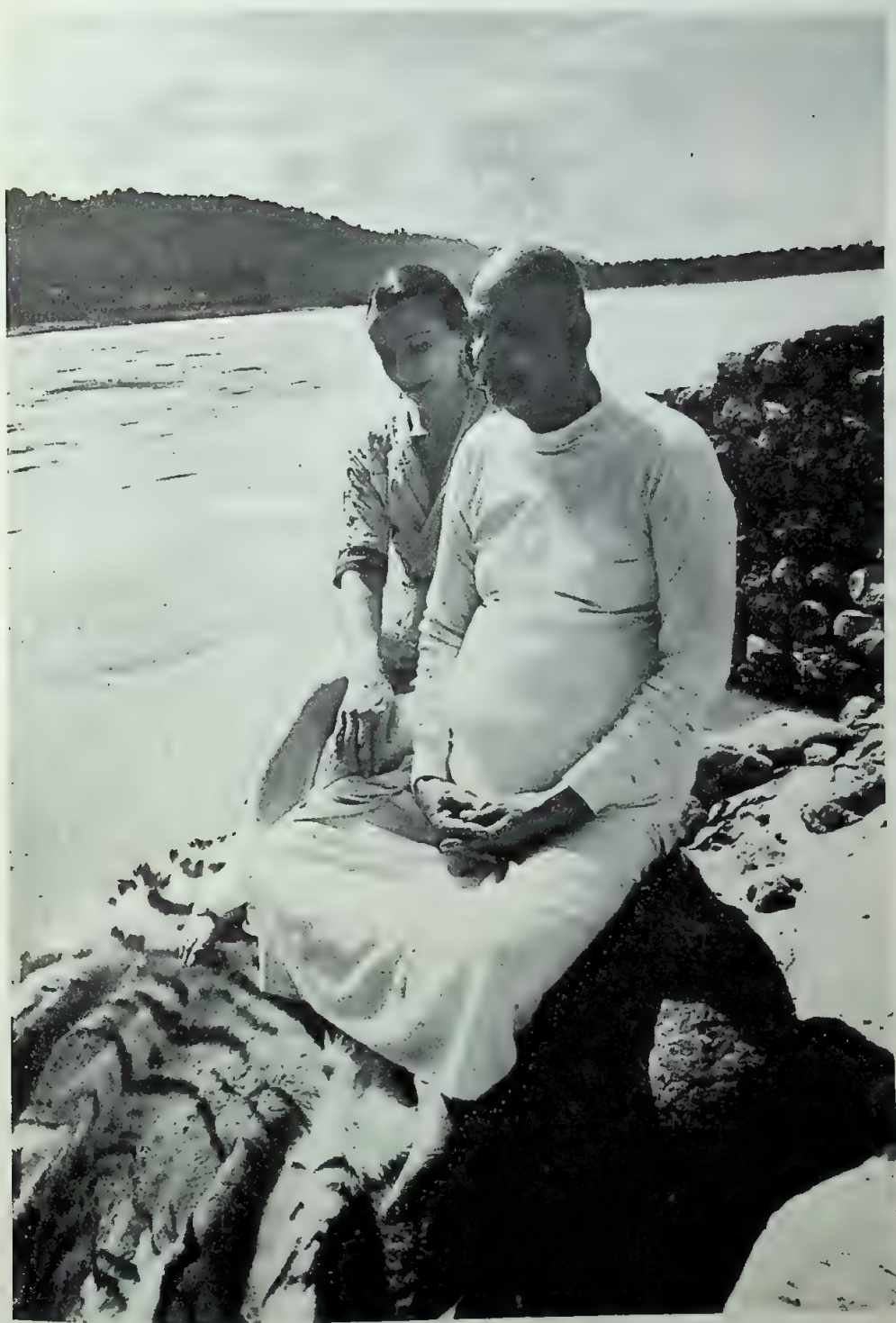
These things require a friend with depth of character, understanding, and someone who will, in the moment of doubt, not drag you away from the Goal, but rather give support to your commitment and help you to bring out the best in yourself.

*Guru as the  
best friend*

After you have found your Guru, it may take a long time before your spiritual teacher is recognized as your best friend because of many moments of painful awareness. This awareness, even though painful, means that the process of attaining mental and emotional maturity is still going on. However, in the early stages of development, one reacts with resentment and it is only much later that a sense of gratitude emerges from within naturally.

*Friends reflect  
self-image*

It takes sensitivity and awareness to bring out the best in someone else, to be a best friend. The choice of friends and the extent to which one criticizes others are reflections of self-image. Improved self-image and a beneficial kind of self-perception come from



Swami Sivananda Radha and Swami Sivananda Saraswati

the pursuit of mental worship of one's Iṣṭadevatā in the heart.

*Divine Light  
Invocation*

The Divine Light Invocation makes the greatest contribution to the change of self-image because of identification with the Divine Light. The Divine Light Invocation, which has been practiced in preceding Cakras, now becomes the preparatory step for the Meditation on the Light included in this chapter.

*Mantra: a  
tool for chang-  
ing self-image*

Mantra is an ever-living embodiment of Power and Truth. It is another important tool in changing self-image and whether the voice is strong or feeble is not important, but the underlying "emotion-desire-longing" which, when given expression in chanting or reciting Mantra, becomes a magnet attracting the higher Force. This higher Force will someday spark a "flame" deep within and develop into a self-generating force.

By using these tools with attention and concentration you can affect the images of the mind.

- The mind is ever creating—what?
- That which is created—what happens to it?
- The mind creates beautiful images (manifesting them or not).
- The mind creates ugly images (manifesting them or not).

*Can you be a  
"best friend"?*

Now that you have examined the characteristics of a best friend and your own self-image, it is time to investigate if you have the qualities yourself to become someone else's best friend. Character building in oneself is what attracts or makes one worthy of another person who is also building character. From the review of the ideals and the diary, it should now be clear what you need to cultivate. Personality changes take place according to the strength of the desire to achieve the Goal. Here you should once more go over the exercises in the Maṇipūra Cakra



on negative qualities and their positive opposites, bringing in your newly developed awareness. Listing such qualities and feelings makes clear the subtlety of the obstacles one encounters.

When emotions arise, catch them, look at them, take all power out, withdraw identification from them. This practice takes time, but it may be better than to struggle with them. It is harmful, even destructive, to suppress emotions or to deny their existence. Transform them into refined feelings. If the emotions have erupted before awareness could catch them, replay the situation and take the position of an onlooker. This will help to become detached. Emotions are attached to certain personality aspects—the Self is always only the Witness.

*Catch rising emotions*

Desires arise from memory of experiences of the past. They are also projections into the future. Selfish desires are outgrowths from competition and comparisons. Whatever the root of these desires, take the battle-axe of the Devī and cut them off before it is too late. Discrimination serves very well as a battle-axe because not all desires are detrimental to one's growth. A desire to grow in character and spirituality is necessary for growth to take place.

*Discrimination*

Desires have to be carefully evaluated. What can one do about old desires manifesting when one has progressed beyond that point? Pray. Ask that the desires that accompanied a lesser state of development will not be fulfilled. With a greater awareness of needs there is a greater attempt to simplify life in order to remove all possible distractions from the chosen Path.

*Evaluation*

Renunciation of desires can be achieved without pain and frustration if the contents or the fulfillment of them is well reasoned out. Leaving them to the emotions means that the attachment is still there, that one really wants this or that, but is denying oneself. It is important to make a list of desires, to look at each, and to evaluate with discrimination.

*Renunciation of desires*

*Control of:  
thoughts  
body  
speech*

Negative thoughts, if left unattended, bereft of energy, will die by themselves, like a plant without nourishment. However, the control of thoughts has to be preceded by control of body and speech. Here are a few methods to help with the control and cultivation of speech.

1. Choose subjects carefully.
2. Avoid stimulating talk about sex.
3. Avoid stimulating talk about money.
4. Avoid stimulating talk about various pleasures.

Realize that you lay your own traps by indulging in careless conversation. It is this carelessness that is the beginning of temptation.

*Investigate  
beliefs*

Another investigation to be made at this time concerns the core of beliefs of which one may or may not have been aware. Part of the process of clarification that is now necessary is to discover beliefs and where they came from. Beware of mindless conformity. The Path of Yoga means personal responsibility. Clarification of such words as "sympathy," "kindness," "compassion," leads to acceptance of others and then to an *inner* union in oneself.

*Do you say  
what you  
think?*

Pay attention to what people really think and whether they say what they think, or if they make you guess. Do you get a message that is different from the words? Do *you* say what you think, or do you imply and insinuate? How does this go with straight-walk thinking?

*Words and  
their  
meanings*

You must fully comprehend the important words you use. Make a list of them, clarify their meanings, and note the way you use them. The list below is by no means complete. A minimum of three minutes should be given to each single word, first thinking about and then writing down the meaning. Do not use books written by others. The aspirant must take responsibility for what is meant.

—perspective . . . thought . . . concentration . . .  
memory . . . observation . . . imagination . . .

learning . . . humor . . . discrimination . . . waking state . . . sleeping state . . . trance . . . telepathy . . . clairvoyance . . . clairsaudience . . . hypnosis . . .

Sometime later in the course of development this exercise should be repeated and notes compared to ascertain that your horizon has widened. By repetition of this exercise understanding grows in depth and becomes refined. All perceptions go through a process of refinement. Each aspirant should extend this list of words to include those that are frequently used, in order to gain the maximum benefit.

Continue this process of clarification with questions such as:

*Questioning  
process*

- How is pain experienced?
- What is my concept of Energy? in general . . . in the body . . . specifically in the brain (because it records all sensations like pain).
- Do I consider Light as a by-product of Energy, or vice versa?
- What is my concept of consciousness? How does it function in the brain?

Phrases like the following are common in everyday speech. Think what they mean to you and then add to the list yourself:

*Touch as  
expressed in  
speech*

- touch and go
- a finishing touch
- a touching scene, person, tone of voice
- a soft touch
- touch with the eyes
- touch my heart
- as soft as butter
- as hard as nails
- see how it feels

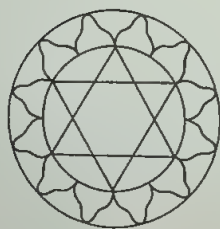
Such idioms are very revealing in their use.



*Importance of  
attitude and  
motives*

In the Anāhata Cakra the aspirant becomes aware that attitude is extremely important. The preparation for perfection in Yoga is control of the mind. The right attitude and motives result in the clear conscience that is necessary to receive intuitive wisdom. The heightened perception of the five senses on which this depends is only possible through proper relaxation. In all spiritual practice surrender has to be stressed, as in the death pose of Haṭha Yoga. Special attention is given to prāṇāyāma in this Cakra. Mind can be controlled by breath. One has to learn to accept unjust criticism and must forego self-justification. The meaning of symbols has to be understood on a much more subtle level than in the preceding Cakras and the previously given exercises have to be continued with greater sensitivity.

On a more advanced level, there will be a greater ability to surrender. As the mind is carried on the waves of the breath, so the swan, Haṃsa, is carried on the waves of the water to know the Ātman (Self).



# Prāṇāyāma

Prāṇāyāma as traditionally presented refers to:

- i) Prāṇa: life force, often interpreted as breath. Prāṇa is consciousness, the most subtle life-essence that pervades all manifested forms. Prāṇa is the sum total of all existing energy in the universe, that primal Energy manifest, unmanifest, or in a nuclear state.
- ii) Yama: the Lord of Death (Naciketas, as told in the Kathopaniṣad, obtained enlightenment through Yama's instructions). In the 8 limbs of Yoga (Aṣṭāṅga) Yama is also described as ethical discipline.
- iii) Āyāma means extension, stretching or restraint.

*Prāṇa,  
Yama,  
Āyāma*

Prāṇāyāma is the yogic practice of breath control, which enables the Yogi to attune to the Cosmic rhythm. Prāṇāyāma is a process through which one can isolate one's inner Self from the influences and influx of mechanical thoughts. Through the practice of prāṇāyāma the Yogi gains control over the central nervous system and, most important, over the mind itself. Prāṇāyāma involves control by a triple process: the inhalation (pūraka), suspension (kumbhaka), and exhalation (recaka) of breath. There are two phases of kumbhaka: antara-kumbhaka, the interval between full inhalation and exhalation, and bāhya-kumbhaka, the interval between full exhalation and inhalation. Kumbhaka is also used to denote all three aspects of the prāṇāyāmic process.

*What is  
prāṇāyāma?*

Prāṇāyāma must be practiced in conjunction with character building. The selfishness and passions of the lower self, symbolized by the trunks of the elephant in the Mūlādhāra Cakra, have to be brought under control. With a purified character prāṇāyāma is one of the practices given by the Guru to awaken the dormant Kuṇḍalinī Energy or Śakti. The nāḍīs or nerve channels through which the Kuṇḍalinī Energy flows may be cleansed by the practice of certain

*Prāṇāyāma  
and character  
building*

prāṇāyāmas. Prāṇāyāma must be learned from an experienced teacher.

*Prāṇāyāma,  
desires, and  
death*

The Yogis teach that we have only so many breaths in each lifetime. An emotional or rajasic temperament will "burn one up" and thus shorten one's life span. Practice of prāṇāyāma leads to emotional control and limitation of selfish desires, so the mind is prepared for the higher stages of yogic practice.

*Benefits*

Practice of prāṇāyāma increases the alpha waves in the brain. If done correctly it leads to control over the emotions, calmness of mind, curing of nervous disorders, and the refinement of sense perceptions. Awareness of the internal noises of the body and other finer, subtler sense perceptions develop through the practice of prāṇāyāma. All impurities of selfish desire are removed and a sense of peace and harmony is experienced, which naturally leads the mind to meditation. The mind becomes the abode of extrasensory perception. Intuitive knowledge increases as scheming is eliminated.

*Relaxation  
an essential  
prerequisite*

For the practice of prāṇāyāma relaxation is essential. This is a very important point. Preliminary exercises for the body as a whole, and the neck and shoulders in particular, should be done prior to prāṇāyāma practice. (The lungs should be filled three-quarters full without tension and with complete relaxation in the body.) In the beginning do only the practice of 4-16-8 prāṇāyāma with finger counting, no more than 6 rounds daily for the first six months. (See Finger Exercises in next section.) Do not attempt too much at one time. The ideal time for prāṇāyāma practice is after Haṭha Yoga āsanās and end relaxation. If desired, a glass of milk or cup of tea may be taken beforehand, though it is best to do prāṇāyāma on an empty stomach. Always breathe through the nose during prāṇāyāma. Take time to relax after each prāṇāyāma. Savāsana (the corpse pose) is ideal for relaxation. Prāṇāyāma should not be done by persons with high blood pressure.



Any sitting pose in which the spine is straight, chin slightly in, and the body relaxed may be used for prāṇāyāma. To relax the neck and body, relaxation exercises are given below.

*Posture*

Mantra repetition during prāṇāyāma favorably influences one's subconscious, giving spiritual suggestion to the mind. The medulla oblongata (uppermost part of spinal cord next to the brain) may be used as a center for concentration only during prāṇāyāma.

*Mantra and  
prāṇāyāma*

### Benefits of Prāṇāyāma

Karma can be burned up.

Illusion is destroyed (latent fire in the mind).

Calmness and one-pointedness of mind attained.

Vagus nerves brought under control.

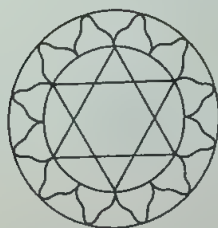
Proper elimination of carbon dioxide; proper absorption of oxygen.

Control over the restless mind.

Sense of peace and harmony.

Increased awareness and ability to observe.

Relaxing effect on the heart and nervous system.



# Prāṇāyāma: Preparatory Exercises

Relaxation of the whole body:

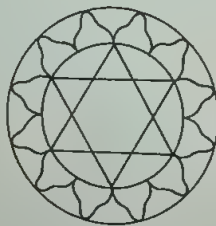
## *Neck*

- a. head—stick out  
—pull back
- b. head—gently drop to right shoulder  
—gently drop to left shoulder
- c. head—gently drop forward  
—gently drop backward
- d. head—gently roll in a full circle clockwise, 10 times.  
—gently roll in a full circle counter-clockwise, 10 times.

## *Abdomen*

- a. Stand with feet shoulder-width apart.
- b. Place hands on hip joints.
- c. Slightly bend the knees.
- d. Bend forward from hip joints with straight spine.
- e. Pull abdominal muscles in.
- f. Relax abdominal muscles.
- g. Take a deep breath and stretch at the same time, lifting arms up.
- h. Exhale, relax arms.

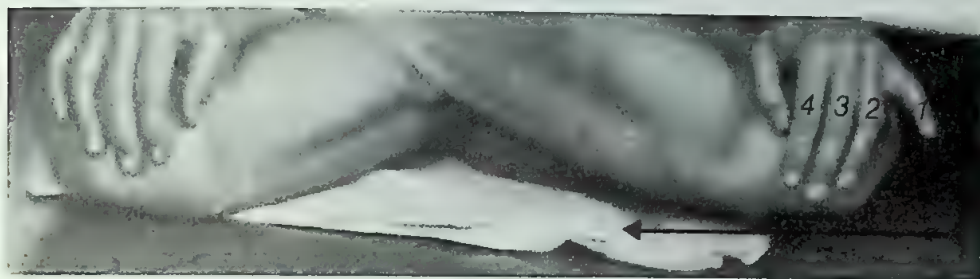
Repeat 10 times.



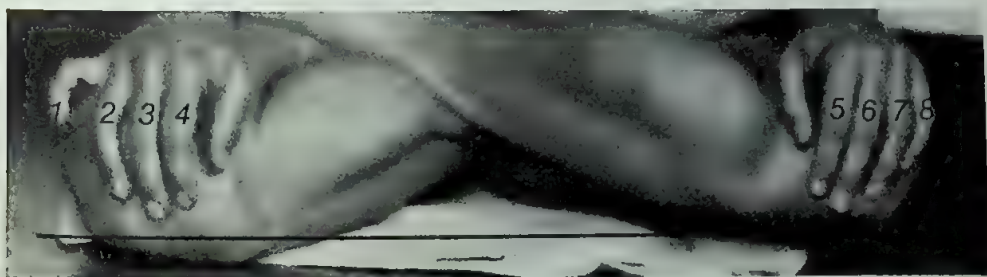
## Prāṇāyāma: Finger Exercises

Finger counting is done in prāṇāyāma so the mind can concentrate on something else, such as a Mantra or short prayer.

Below is given the finger counting for 4-16-8 Prāṇāyāma, in which one inhales for the count of 4, holds the breath for the count of 16, and exhales for the count of 8.



- A. For count of 4: Start on left hand with the little finger and continue to left forefinger.
- B. For count of 8: Start on right hand with the little finger and continue to right forefinger (count of 4). Then continue from left forefinger to left little finger (another count of 4), making a total of 8.
- C. For count of 16: Begin on right hand with little finger and continue to left little finger for a total of 8, as in "B." Repeat this for a count of 16.



Inhalation has to take place for the full length of 4 counts.

Holding for the length of 16 counts.

Exhalation for the length of 8 counts.

After the finger counting has become familiar, mentally recite a Mantra or short prayer with each count.



## Bhastrikā-Prāṇāyāma: Bellows Breath

Stand with the feet shoulder-width apart. Place the hands on the hips. Bend the knees slightly and bend forward at the hip joints, keeping the spine and head in a straight line. Using the abdominal muscles breathe in and out, follow a rhythm of tensing and relaxing the abdomen. Do 20 inhalations and exhalations. Keep a steady, even rate; the speed of inhalation and exhalation may be increased with practice. Do not continue if there is any dizziness or tension. Breathe through the nose throughout. There is no need to fill the lungs completely. After the 20 rounds take a deep, slow breath, stretch up and raise the arms above the head. Exhale and slowly lower the arms. Relax in the corpse posture.

Repeat this prāṇāyāma only once a day for the first three months, then increase slowly by capacity. This prāṇāyāma may also be done in a sitting position, with the spine and head kept in a straight line.

## Alternate Nostril Prāṇāyāma

Sit in a relaxed position with the spine straight and head erect. In this prāṇāyāma each nostril is alternately opened and closed using the fingers of the right hand.

Place the hands palms upward on the knees. With the left hand touch the thumb and index finger at their tips. Keep the other fingers outstretched. Straighten the left arm and rest the wrist on the left knee. The touching of the finger tips in this manner forms a hand position known as Jñānamudrā, the symbol or seal of Knowledge. This mudrā symbolizes the union of the individual consciousness (index finger) with the Divine or Cosmic Consciousness.

Bend the right arm at the elbow and bring the hand towards the chest. The right hand is to be used to open and close the nostrils. Bend the index and middle fingers to rest in the center of the palm.

The ring and little fingers are used to close the left nostril and the thumb to close the right nostril, by placing the fingers and thumb against each nostril respectively.

A. Alternate nostril prāṇāyāma:

Close the right nostril with the right thumb. Exhale through the left nostril, then slowly inhale through the left nostril. Close the left nostril and exhale through the right nostril. Now repeat the process in reverse. Slowly inhale through the right nostril. Close the right nostril and exhale through the left nostril. There is no kumbhaka (retention of breath) in this prāṇāyāma. Twelve inhalations and twelve exhalations complete one full round.

B. Alternate nostril 4-16-8:

Close the right nostril with the right thumb, exhale through the left nostril then inhale through the left nostril to the count of four. Close the left nostril with the ring and little fingers. Hold the breath to the count of sixteen. Open the right nostril and exhale to the count of eight. Now inhale through the right nostril and repeat the process in reverse.

C. Alternate nostril 4-16-8 with A-U-M:

Close the right nostril, exhale then inhale through the left nostril, and meditate on A (sound as ah) to the count of four. Hold the breath to the count of sixteen and meditate on the sound U (as oo). Exhale through the right nostril to the count of eight and meditate on M (as mm sound). Now inhale through the right nostril and repeat the process in reverse. Begin with four or five times daily. Increase to twenty or thirty.

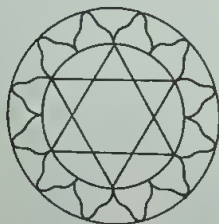


## Kuṇḍalinī Prāṇāyāma

Prepare as for previous prāṇāyāmas. Concentrate on the Mūlādhāra Cakra. With hands placed as for alternate nostril prāṇāyāma, close the right nostril with the right thumb, exhale and inhale through the left nostril to the count of 3 OM's. Imagine drawing in Prāṇa with the breath inhaled. Close the left nostril. Retain the breath for 12 OM's. Send current down the spinal column into the Mūlādhāra Cakra. Imagine the current striking against the Lotus in the Mūlādhāra Cakra. Exhale slowly through the right nostril to the count of 3 OM's. Now inhale through the right nostril, repeating the process in reverse. Practice 3 full rounds twice daily.

## Prāṇic Healing

Prāṇa can be stored in the medulla oblongata, then released at will toward the patient in need of healing. Laying on of hands can be done simultaneously. Or a gentle massage can be used while Prāṇic Energy flows into the patient's body. Keep a positive attitude, free from any criticism, with deep concentration on the healing Light. Let the Light flow through—*through*—never from you. Give of the overflow of Light, see yourself as a channel for the healing Light. If the mind becomes active, divert this activity by talking to the body parts or cells in need of healing.





## The Mantra So'ham̐ Haṃsa

The rhythm of life is breath—inhalation, exhalation; expansion, contraction. The mind has its own polarity also. Practice of this Mantra as described will establish a rhythm in harmony with the rhythm of all the life force around you. A great inner stillness is the result of this practice. Awareness of the body ceases entirely. This exercise is very useful as a preparation for the more complex practices which are given later in the book. This Mantra can also be used preceding the performance of the Divine Light Invocation.

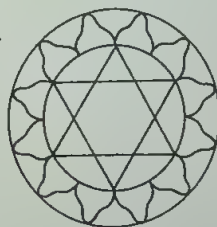
Results in all practices seem to be very far away, perhaps even impossible to attain. Let this not affect you. Remember that only half of the moon is visible at times and yet the light of the moon is always there. It is only that it is obscured from view.

When you begin to do this exercise, use your fingers to count. In time the rhythm will become a natural flow. The meaning of So'ham̐ is "I am He" and Sâham̐ is "I am She."

Exhale—mentally repeat So (or Sâ).

Inhale—mentally repeat Haṃ.

Repeat this for a few minutes and then reverse, mentally saying Haṃ on exhalation and So on inhalation.



## Thoughts on Reverence for Life

Much has been said about cultivation of sense perception. The aspirant might be helped with the following suggestion. Saying grace before eating is a very common habit with many people, but it is equally common that the conversation is resumed right after, which indicates that there was not much reverence for life expressed in that prayer. In order to overcome that, a day should be chosen when more time can be devoted to the meal and the ingredients for the meal should be simple and few. For example, the choice could be potatoes, lettuce, a boiled egg, fried fish, and a piece of bread. Have the meal all prepared and put it on the table, covering the food.

Clarify to yourself or, if the meal is taken in the company of others, take charge and guide the thoughts of those present.

—I am hungry.

—I want to eat.

—My body needs nourishment.

—For what?

—To stay alive?

—To indulge?

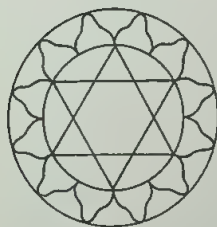
—For self-gratification?

—Or to give some selfless service to others?

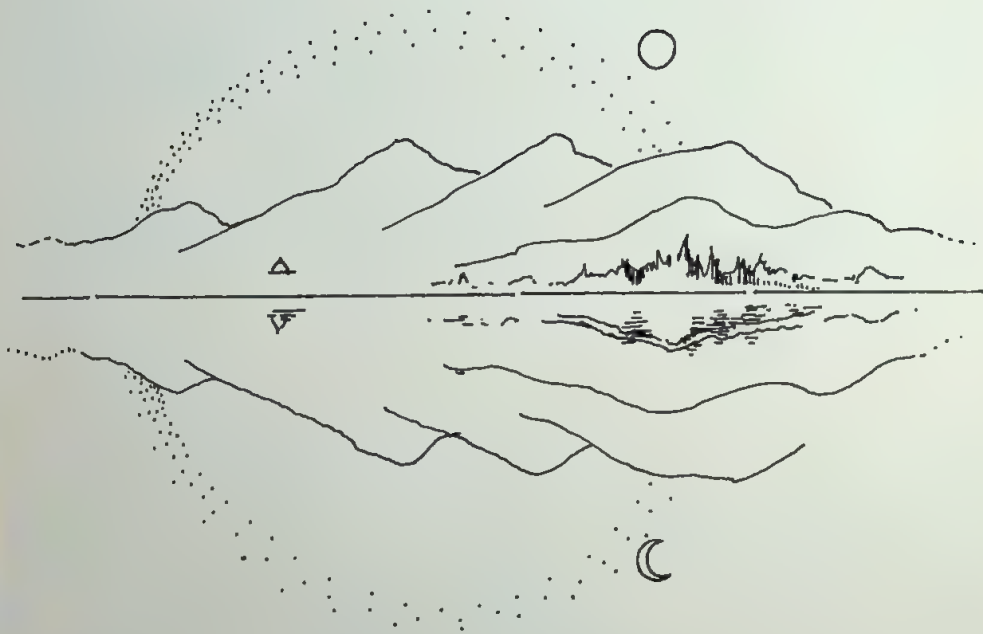
I go to the field where the potatoes are grown and dig my hands into the ground; try to find the tubers and wrench them out. Then I walk to the field where the wind moves the grain in waves and the sun plays and gilds it. And again, with rough hands I grab the strands and rip them out in big bunches, to carry them home and put the grain through the painful process of being crushed to make flour. This is for my convenience to make bread. On the way to the chicken house I pull out a head of lettuce thoughtlessly because it has become so habitual not to pay any attention. In the same unthinking way I take the egg from the hen's nest and carry it with me to the kitchen to be boiled in hot water. This could really be sufficient for my needs, but how the taste buds vibrate at the thought of a tasty fish, so I go to the water and throw a line to catch the fish. In my lake swim many fish, some of average, some of very delicate taste. The first one I catch is not really what I want. Shall I throw him back? It is awkward to remove the fish hook. It cannot

be done with gentleness because, as was apparent in getting all the other food, I have lost the touch of gentleness. Throwing the fish back into the lake I think, "I am not so bad, after all." But this is only a fleeting thought and I throw the line again. This time I get a small one—one of those that I wanted, that are very delicate, so I catch a few more. As I throw the first one in my bucket of water it desperately tries to get out, thrashes about in the water and tries to get away, but finally exhausted, gives up. I catch a few more fish. Now I am ready to go back to the house—ready for the meal. Grabbing the fish, which once more make an attempt to struggle for their lives, I crush them one by one until they are dead. I slice their silvery little bodies open and scrape them out, their entrails lying on the kitchen table. Now they are in the frying pan. What a wonderful meal! I am really a good cook and I will gather lots of compliments for my care and preparation. Perhaps someone will even say, "You really cooked with love." Did I?

If I use the body as an instrument for my search for the Most High, all life that I have had to kill in the process of nourishing it will benefit from the vibration of holy thoughts.







arc

## Reflection on Māyā (Illusion)

My body is like the mountain.  
My eyes are like the lake.  
My mind is like the sky.

Plants feed on the mountains.  
My body feeds on the plants.

My eyes are like the lake.  
Water reflects the clouds, the clouds of my creation.  
My creation is but the shadow on the water that reflects all images.

My mind is like the sky.  
My creations are like the clouds that float across the sky.  
Old images surface on the lake of my mind and bounce on its waves.  
Vision widens to embrace the Void.

*In your Viśuddhi I serve Śiva, the progenitor  
of the sky, transparent like a pure crystal,  
and also the Devī who is like Śiva and at-  
tached to Him. It is through their beauty and  
graceful movements, shimmering like the rays  
of the moon, the world shines, its internal  
darkness having been dispelled, like the  
Cakora.*

MANTRA FOR THE VIŚUDDHA CAKRA



## Chapter Eight



*Viśuddha*

The Fifth Cakra



# Viśuddha

## The Fifth Cakra and its Symbols

VIŚUDDHA: The Fifth Cakra or Lotus.

TATTVA: Differentiating faculty.

72 RAYS: Relate to ether (ākāśa).

HEARING: The Viśuddha Cakra controls this sense.

SIXTEEN Lotus Petals: The Lotus is sacred.

COLOR of the Petals: Smoky purple.

THE LETTERS on the Petals: A - Ā - I - Ī - U - Ū - Ṛ - Ṛ - L -  
Ḍ - E - AI - O - AU - AM - AḤ.

ĀKĀŚAMANDALA — Circle: The ethereal region and gateway  
of Liberation.

AIRĀVATA — Elephant: The animal in the Cakra is an elephant  
as white as snow.

BĪJA — Seed Sound: HAM (Mantra of Ambara, the bīja of ether).

PINGALĀ: The Nāḍī on the right side of the body.

ĪḌĀ: The Nāḍī on the left side of the body.

SUŚUMNĀ: The central channel of the spine.

CITRIṆĪ: Three in one (sattva, rajas, tamas). Body, mind, and  
speech.



GOD: Sadāśiva: The male aspect of Energy unmanifest.

The intelligence on this level is symbolized by Sadāśiva.



Sadāśiva is the three-eyed Deva in the lap of Ambara on a white bull. The third eye is the eye of wisdom. He has five faces and ten arms, is clothed in a tiger skin, and has a garland of snakes.

The five faces represent the presence of the qualities of omniscience, omnipresence, and omnipotence, and also the sublimation of the five senses, each face having an eye of wisdom. The ten arms imply efficiency and the Power used with wisdom, which is symbolized by the snakes.

#### OBJECTS:

*Pāśa* - *Noose*: warns of being caught in pride of knowledge.

*Aṅkuśa* - *Goad*: shows that goading or pushing is still needed.

*Gesture*: Abhayamudrā - dispelling fears.

*Nāgendra* - *Snake king*: symbolic for temptation or wisdom.

*Śūla* - *Trident*: symbol of the trinity (physical, ethereal, and causal body).

*Dahana* - *Fire*: the fire of ambition—in what areas?

*Ghaṇṭā* - *Bell*: symbol for listening.

*Vajra* - *Diamond scepter*: awareness of power.

*Kṛpaṇa* - *Sword*: the sword of discrimination.

*Tāṅka* - *Battle-axe*: used to cut away old personality aspects.

GODDESS: Gaurī (Eternal). The female aspect of Energy manifest.



The intelligence on this level is symbolized by Gaurī Eternal.

She is half of Lord Śiva's body. Gaurī is the Mother of the Universe and also the other half of Lord Śiva.

#### OBJECTS:

*Pāśa - Noose:* warns of not being caught in sound.

*Aṅkuśa - Goad:* one is being goaded on to the last efforts.

*Arrow:* direction must be clear.

*Bow:* tension (alertness) is necessary.

The elephant symbolizes will subdued because of surrender. The triangle with the point down indicates that the Divine Energy, now properly used and understood, is available to a greater extent. When control of mind and emotions, and surrender is achieved, the Cakra promises constant, gentle, steady peace of mind. One sees the past, present, and future. One becomes courageous, forgiving, free from greed, malice, and pride.

# The Goddess of Speech— Śakti

*Limitations of  
speech*

Speech, now refined, shows in the Fifth or Viśuddha Cakra the limitations of words. Perceptions can come by thought, but these are not the highest experience. "Perception beyond words" has to be clarified. Does "beyond words" mean mental speech, or beyond mental speech? If we say "beyond mind" we must ask, "If it is beyond mind, then how can it be known?"

*The Devī,  
Śakti: the  
source*

The Devī (Śakti) is the source of what is perceived beyond words, beyond mind. This is usually expressed by saying "a knowing of the heart," another dimension. Such perceptions are beyond verbalization, without color or form, without concepts, all-encompassing like the sky. As an example, the rays of the sun travel in all directions. They do not form part of the sun, but are the sun. If consciousness is Energy (Śakti), and Energy is indestructible, then an unusual manifestation of consciousness can be perceived as coming through the Guru or the Devī. When the aspirant has refined the sense of hearing to that point, this will undoubtedly be verified by personal experience.

*Perception of  
the Guru or  
the Devī*

*Speech beyond  
words*

Speech beyond words is also saying something by a gesture, by a touch, or by an expression of the eyes. Speaking from the heart, while audible through the use of words, is expressing inaudibly at the same time. The Divine Word (holy name, Mantra), through the process of practice, will become inaudible on its own account and thus Divine speech is engendered. The power of the spoken word is derived from a forceful desire and therefore that power is not different from the power of thought.

*Word  
Vibration  
Manifestation*

First we have the word (sound), then the vibration of the sense that receives the sound, and third the manifestation of what has been received. The sum-



mary of all these ideas is expressed in the Devī of Speech (vibrations). Sound and its resonance are inseparable and can result in powerful emotional responses. Perceiving the Devī is on the subtle level of the power of sound and its resonance, which is missed by the average person.

*Sound and  
resonance*

Beware of using words for laying a trap for others or for oneself. This can be done by asking leading questions, "putting words into the mouth" of another person. Look at your life's situation to discover where and when you have done so and which traps have already been laid. Great effort is necessary to discover these traps.

*Words as  
traps*

Speech that is praised is like a sweet drink or a strong spirit, bolstering the ego or the emotions. However, when the voice is the magnet that attracts others, and a chord resounds in the heart of the listener, this is a sign that the aspirant is in contact with the Devī of Speech, with Sarasvatī.

*Magnetism of  
voice*

The Devī of Speech can be approached through reflection and the following salutation:

*O Devī! O Sarasvatī!*

*Reside Thou ever in my speech.*

*Reside Thou ever on my tongue tip,*

*O Divine Mother, giver of faultless poetry.*

*Salute to  
the Devī*

From the Devī of Speech we learn that when the oil of worldly desires is burned up, She Herself, the Mother and Creatrix of all, is realized. She also tells us that unfavorable karma is burned up when Her spiritual child, the aspirant, turns the gaze fully on Her. This clears the way for the aspirant to have the strength, persistence, wisdom, and circumstances necessary to achieve the goal of the full realization of the Creative Energy (Kuṇḍalinī). The difficulties in using everyday language to express the underlying principles makes them seem almost secret. All wisdom is secret to the ignorant and that makes it difficult to interpret such knowledge in daily language.

*When is  
the Devī  
realized?*

*The Devī:  
intelligence at  
its highest*

*Spiritual ex-  
periences are  
beyond mind*

*Seeing lights:  
signposts*

*Cosmic Fire*

When we recognize that the term Devī, Divine Mother or Śakti, means power or intelligence at its highest, then we can speak of "Cosmic Intelligence" and see the Energy on an impersonal level.

Performing certain exercises, that are meant to give perfect control of sense perception and the mental background noises of the mind, may result in the manifestation of psychic energy or even in spiritual experiences, as was discussed in the Anāhata Cakra. The spiritual experience is an enormous transformation and perhaps it would not be an exaggeration to say that the Cosmic Fire indeed lights up the horizon of life. While the psychic phenomenon is of the senses and the powers of the mind, the spiritual experience is of a Divine nature, beyond the mind and beyond the control of the aspirant. It cannot be repeated at will. Living in such a state would mean living in the blissful state of truly aware being.

In moments of quiet and reflection, a kind of meditative mood emerges. In this stillness of mind lights can be experienced, beautiful hues of color—very bright blues or yellows. They may dim and flow into each other like a display of northern lights. When such experiences are new they create a wave of enthusiasm in the aspirant and that is what they are meant to do. They are a signpost saying, "You are on the right path, on the right road." But to indulge would mean turning those experiences into a spiritual entertainment. Every good teacher discourages a student from giving those manifestations any significance beyond encouragement.

The seeing of lights shows that, for a brief moment, the mind was free from thoughts. The importance was in simply being an observer and refraining from interpreting that which was observed.

The Cosmic Fire is a light that is beyond all those little lights that are experienced in quietness. They are the boon of the Devī for effort. While we may have some difficulties with terms like "Cosmic

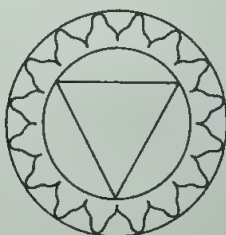
Fire," "Intelligence," "Light," they have to suffice as they are the best we have until we can familiarize ourselves with the Language of the Gods. They should not be discarded because they are in themselves limited, but should be recognized as useful stepping-stones to approach another dimension.

In a moment of meditation or reflection the aspirant may have a sudden insight, a state of awareness not previously experienced, in which all mistakes are recognized, all things are seen for what they are. The aspirant should try to recall a moment in life when he or she was very conscious of something of great importance. Such an experience has nothing to do as yet with Kuṇḍalinī but, at that moment, the aspirant stopped the habit of mechanical thinking, habitual responses and reactions.

*Sudden  
insight*

The Cosmic Fire is a term that the aspirant has to bring to a personal level in order to truly understand its meaning. It is a term related to Energy on a Cosmic level where the aspirant has a Cosmic vision and hears the Cosmic sound of AUM. Cosmic Fire is a great Cosmic Light existing beyond all names, shapes, and forms, and at one point even the concept of the Higher Self, if it has any trace of the personal form, has to be let go.

*Cosmic vision*





## Thoughts on Hearing

*Ether*

The Viśuddha Cakra stands for the sense of hearing which is, from the Western point of view, the last of the five senses. In the East, mind the interpreter is considered the sixth sense. The element of the Cakra, ether, means something very elusive, ethereal, and yet very powerful. The influences on a human being are subtle and yet can bring about great changes in the body and mind. The dictionary definition of ether indicates that it has three aspects: the abstract, the physical, and the chemical.

*An ethereal  
experience*

Ethereal is defined as: light, airy, heavenly, of unearthly delicacy of substance, character, or appearance, something of great subtlety or transparency. To hear the music of the spheres would be an ethereal experience. To hear the Goddess or Devī speak and the sound of the Cosmic AUM is the crown of all experiences through the sense of hearing. This indeed may start delicately and subtly, but can become very powerful, lifting the listener into a different ethereal world.

*Interfering  
thoughts pre-  
vent hearing*

Hearing is a subtle process. It is indeed ethereal because the interfering voices that prevent us from hearing are our own thoughts. Much energy is wasted listening to those thoughts which are based on mental speculation, self-defence, self-justification, so that it becomes impossible to truly hear what another person says. Pain results from this lack of communication and that is why so much attention must be paid to removing the screens that we erect in front of our senses. When the refinement of the sense of hearing permits us to rise above the level of ordinary daily existence and observe from a more subtle level (ether), we see that the clarity and the understanding that we assumed we had vanish into thin air before we can grasp them.

Listening is an art. To hear the true message through all the veils demands a very skillful listener who can extract from the words what the speaker truly says. How much more sensitivity, then, is required to hear the still, small voice within. The acquisition of powers, which may be a hidden desire, depends on the ability to concentrate, the ability to mentally relax and receive, to be in control of the merry-go-round of the mind. Listening ability in present-day life is cut down by a variety of strident noises that are not only imposed on us by industry, work, and so on, but that we choose ourselves. There is little protection outside the home, but the aspirant must become conscious that there are places where control can be exercised.

*The still,  
small voice*

*Noise in  
surroundings*

The emphasis on mechanical habits in regard to the sense of hearing is just as important as it was in dealing with the previous senses.

*Mechanical  
habits*

There are many potentials that can be developed in the human being and the ability to be a good listener is one of the most important. In certain professions it is essential to be able to listen with depth of understanding. Many skills can be developed quickly. Listening, however, is only excellent when the listener has also developed the ability of recall. The human mind is an incredible storehouse of memory, but without recall we cannot retrieve what is known. Many psychics have simply learned to draw on this storehouse, which contains our past lives as well as our present. Information about ancient civilizations could be gained if this faculty of recall were utilized.

*Develop the  
ability of  
recall*

The refinement of the senses that has been emphasized in each Cakra applies to the sense of hearing, perhaps even more than to the sense of sight. There are many stages, from the basic state of hearing only the rough, the harsh, the arrogant to the level where we can hear the music of the spheres.

*Refining the  
sense of  
hearing*

Before it is possible to still the mind and surren-

*Surrender*

der to what is heard, we can start on the physical level with the "Death Pose." The name of the Death Pose itself explains its meaning of no reaction, complete surrender to what is, ending all arguments. The only validity for listening to one's thoughts is when positive key sentences have been put into the mind to replace the old negative ones.

*The opponent  
to hearing is  
the ego*

It must be recognized that assertions of self-will, which subdue the message spoken by another person, have no validity outside ourselves. It is an illusion to think they will bring good results. For example, a typical reaction when speaking to a person who does not understand the language is to speak louder and louder, in the false belief that this will bring comprehension. The motive for speaking in a low key must be genuine. If it is hiding pushiness or dominance, while giving the appearance of being soft and gentle, it is a lie. In how many ways does one lie? Dominance and pushiness are uncultivated will, and even if speech is sweet and gentle it is an act of deception. Like the other senses, hearing has to be understood on the tamasic, rajasic, and sattvic levels.

*The precious  
ear of Divine  
Mother*

The ear that listens is precious and that preciousness is expressed symbolically in the descriptions of the designs and precious stones of the earrings worn by the Divine Mother. It is not within the range of this presentation to include all the meanings of the jewelry worn by the gods and goddesses of each Cakra, but they all have important symbolic meanings.

*Interaction of  
energy in  
body, mind,  
and speech*

Speech is of no relevance if there is no listener. The trident reappears here in the Viśuddha Cakra to point out the ever-increasing delicacy of the interaction of the energy in the body, in the mind, and in its most exercised expression of speech. This interaction may not be recognized to its full extent for lack of awareness of how the control comes from the mind.



Āsanas are a silent manner of speech and the cells in the body, each with its own consciousness, are the listeners. The body is very teachable and can become a spiritual tool.

*Āsanas: silent speech*

The goad (aṅkuśa) says to the aspirant, "Keep going, move on, pursue development, discriminate." At this point, "stand still" can mean a loss of all previous input and the still, small voice, that is precisely the source of those urgings, needs to be heard by the inner ear.

*The aṅkuśa (goad)*

The noose (pāśa), held in this Cakra by Sadāśiva, warns us not to be caught again in the noose of the intellect, the emotions or wild imaginations, not to be trapped in old habits, mechanicalness, preoccupation with self, and turning a deaf ear. The daily diary will help to discover old traps and even recognize traps before they have been completely laid.

*The pāśa (noose): old habits*

The arrow can only be shot in a straight line by direct commitment and by having a clear goal as a target, by straight-walk thinking and straight-walk action. The target has to be well-defined. Problems that still remain have to be tackled head-on. *All* five senses need to be brought under control by awareness and refinement. The forces of the Maṇipūra Cakra, the fire-wheel of emotions, will make a last attempt here to flare up again with all power and imagination in order to prevent the surrender of self-will. Doubts invade the mind. It is easier to talk oneself out of one's determination than into continuing the pursuit of the Goal. But the fire can be lifted from the purely emotional struggle to the fire of enthusiasm where ignorance is burned in the fire of wisdom.

*The arrow: need for a clear goal*

*The fire of enthusiasm*

What, then, keeps interfering with progress and makes all those warnings necessary, as expressed by the symbols of the goad, the noose, the fire, and the arrow? It is the lurking of the old personality aspects. The battle-axe must be wielded, but it has to be used skillfully. Ego tries again to raise its head in a last

*Battle-axe:  
discrimina-  
tion and  
awareness*

*The bow and  
arrow: ten-  
sion, doubts,  
and desires*

*Spiritual  
companions*

attempt to reassert its power. The lower nature will put up a fierce fight in some areas. The sharpening of the battle-axe is done by discrimination and razor-keen awareness. The sword of discrimination, having two edges, indicates the seriousness of the aspirant's situation; to cut away the undesirable characteristics without hurting oneself demands great skill and strength and clear assessment of what needs to be cut and what needs to be preserved.

The bow and arrow show that tension has to be expected. If the bow is not tense the arrow will not go. The tension has different sources. Doubts and strong desires can be really troublesome. Only by withdrawing the power from them will they diminish. Sometimes another source of tension is the influence of so-called friends who do not understand the road to spiritual success and who will, by comparison, only respect such strenuous effort by the aspirant if the goal is monetary, political or social. When the goal is a higher state of consciousness, their negative arguments seem to be logical and reasonable, and this type of friend is very difficult to deal with. The spiritual road is indeed lonely until you meet your first spiritual companion. How often we already have such companions but do not recognize them!

The more tense the bow the further the arrow will go and the greater the impact on the target.

## Hearing: Exercises

*I hear. The act of hearing. What is heard?*

In the *Viśuddha Cakra* the emphasis is on hearing. This often-neglected sense has to be carefully examined to understand all implications. The preparation in the first three *Cakras* and in the *Anāhata Cakra* specifically will have proved to be fruitful. However, this has to be extended.

True listening means the ability to surrender, thereby speech, as well as mental talking, must be controlled in order to hear clearly. At this point it may become clearer why the Goddess of Speech appeared in each Cakra and why speech is called man's greatest performance. The almost insatiable need to hear oneself talk feeds one's self-importance almost to the exclusiveness even of those that we profess to love. In the daily reflection there should always be an entry in the diary of whether one has been able to surrender to another and how well one can stop listening to oneself. Our habitual way of hearing has to be changed in order to attain quality in listening. Most people who have authority complexes do not recognize that the ego is really the biggest authority, most of the time preventing the aspirant from doing what he or she wants to do. If the ego listens, what does it listen to? Possible hurts or criticism? Compliments? When it comes to praise, the ego can be a real glutton.

By investigating the process of hearing, the aspirant may become aware that many things are screened out and only those things accepted that one wants to hear. Sometimes what is heard has been so twisted that what one thinks one hears is far from correct. The questions to ask are, "Am I listening? Is the ego listening? Who is listening?"

It becomes more complicated to control the ego if one thinks in short negative key sentences. The influence of these can range from strong to subtle and their effect may be hypnotizing. "I always make this mistake". . . "I have never been able to do this". . . "I would rather die than try that". . . "I could never handle that". . . These are habitual thought patterns that are verbalized in the mind, listened to, and then acted upon. It is obvious that this is destructive. Yet there is a choice to think positively, to turn to the opposite. "I have never done this before, but if I give it my attention and try, I am sure I can

*True listening  
means  
surrender*

*Daily  
reflection on  
surrender*

*Authority of  
the ego*

*Screens of  
the ego*

*Negative key  
sentences*



*Stepping-  
stones to inner  
security*

do it." When acted upon, this becomes a small success which can be used as a steppingstone to even bigger ones, which become a good foundation of inner security.

*Will and  
self-will*

Investigation of all ideas about security on a physical, emotional, and mental level can bring one to new conclusions. Habitual actions and reactions that have been investigated already must also be reviewed and shifted to higher levels. Discrimination has to be refined and self-will needs to be subdued. Speed is not efficiency. It may indicate good intention to say, "I wanted to do it fast to go on to something else," but this will not justify sloppy performance. In order to get self-will under control one must first understand the difference between will and self-will. Self-will is an expression of the ego, and if one can understand that "In the will of the Most High I am free" the distinction is clear.

*Surrender to  
another*

The power that is given to self-will in daily life keeps individuals apart and relationships become a battlefield for dominance. Instead, we can use the will to pursue a way of life that brings out the best in ourselves and makes us a blessing to others. A good way to understand the power of self-will is to choose someone and submit to the wants or suggestions of this individual for a certain length of time. The chosen person should have no knowledge of such a decision. The choice should be made alone, silently, and in the utmost sincerity of wanting to have a clear understanding of self-will. In this surrender one begins to perceive one's ability or lack of ability to listen to others. The aspirant becomes aware of the power of the background noises of the mind or the talkativeness of the ego that prevents any kind of real listening.



The god and goddess of the Cakra, Sadāśiva and Gaurī, while apparently separate, like consciousness and mind, are really one. If the rational is considered the male aspect and the irrational the female, when we accept both on an equal basis we understand the union or the first spiritual marriage within ourselves, an important step in the development towards maturity. If the rational and the irrational are in the proper balance, the perceptions of each can be heard, truly heard. This can be called listening with the Third Ear.

*Balance  
rational and  
irrational  
perceptions*

There is often competition between the sense of hearing and one or more of the others. If you find that what is seen interferes with hearing, listen with closed eyes or focus the eyes away from the speaker. Hearing must be through the ears, not through the eyes, and must not be destroyed by what is seen. To understand what is heard it must be "digested." Listen to the pure sound, without interference of the emotions.

*Hear through  
the ears, not  
the eyes*

To help in the clarification of what the sense of hearing means to you, think about each of the following and then add to the list:

*Clarify the  
meaning of  
hearing*

- sounds of a music box
- a running brook
- laughter and sobs
- hearing yourself think
- hearing thought associations
- creating noises in the mind
- garbling the thoughts:
  - to avoid listening
  - not to be involved
  - not to be confronted
  - not to have to do anything about it
  - not to have to make a decision
  - not facing up to certain problems, hindrances

*Investigation  
to know where  
you stand*

Here are some questions that may be of practical help to the aspirant in further investigation of some important areas of the Viśuddha Cakra.

- Am I listening?
- Do I get the message?
- Do I hear only words?
- Do I screen things out?
- What are the reasons for the screening?
- Do I hear my voice?
- Do I like my voice?
- What can a listener gather from my voice? . . . arrogance, warmth, kindness?
- When I listen, what is it that listens? . . . the ego?
- Can I keep the ego suspended, finally withdraw its power altogether?
- Is my self-will behind the ego?
- Have I conditioned myself with negative key sentences that I have been telling myself for many years?
- Should I form new key sentences that will be of benefit and open the door to more perception and listening?
- Is surrender to listening to another a *giving* of myself?
- What is my ability to perceive new insights?
- Are these insights coming from my Higher Self, or from the heart, or an unknown source?
- Can I discriminate between self-will and surrender?
- Do I understand the fine dividing line between self-will and Divine Will?
- Do I keep the sword of discrimination truly sharpened to find the balance between reason and emotion, logic and intuition, fear and courage, clumsiness and lightness, strength and softness?
- Do I have the humility to ask for help when the ego puts up a fierce battle?



A few exercises are given to start the aspirant in the observation of listening and of what is heard. Note the process of screening out what we do not want to hear, or what we claim to have heard. This will bring some surprises. When these exercises are done, we find that lack of awareness is staggering. With persistence, they will truly lead to liberation from self-centeredness.

Listening to a variety of music, carefully selected, preferably with earphones and in a reclining position, will tell you by your emotional responses to the music where you are. Sound and careful listening can trigger long-forgotten events, be they painful or joyful. Later it is advisable to proceed to listening to nature, the wind, birds in the trees, the sounds of the city in the daytime or at night. Listen to your chanting and how your voice undergoes changes from the beginning and how it shows the release of your emotions.

After doing these exercises you will find that you can really listen to the voices of your loved ones and that what they say is music to your ears.

### *Exercises*

#### I. Listening to yourself:

- A. Choose one person and investigate your way of speaking with that person. Try to remember a conversation. What do you observe about your speech? Do you know your own voice? What does it sound like? Do you like it?

- B. Tape yourself speaking. Give an assessment of yourself.

Choose a partner and tape a 10 minute conversation. Challenge the other, try to convince. Note how you sound when emotional. Observe yourself and your partner. Do you hear what the other person says? What do you hear besides the words? List the emotions detected:

—joy — elation — strength — anxiety  
— pain — begging — confusion —  
tears . . .

The words may not convey any of these. Do  
you hear it in the voice? Note.

II. Listening to body noises:

—your stomach — your blood — your heart-  
beat . . .

Note everything down carefully.

III. Listen to the mental conversations in your head:

—What do you hear? Describe.

—Can you stop these mental talks?

—If you can, how do you do it? Describe.

—If you cannot, would you want to learn how?

(It will be necessary to have this mental control  
if you wish to pursue the spiritual Path of  
Kuṇḍalinī.)

IV. With the new insights on listening, chant a Mantra  
of your choice for two hours.

—Watch the mind carefully.

—Write observations for 15 minutes after the  
first hour of chanting, then after the second.

—At the end of the two-hour period, make more  
detailed notes.

V. A. Say your own name aloud for 2 hours.

—For the first hour look at yourself in the  
mirror while saying your name.

—For the second hour do not use a mirror.

—Make notes for 15 minutes after each hour  
of the exercise.

B. Say aloud someone else's name for 10 minutes.

—Choose a name that is symbolic in some way  
or important to you.

—Watch yourself and all your reactions.

—Make notes of all you observe.

VI. Listen to music for 15 minutes.

—Choose a piece of music on record or tape.

—Listen to the music while:

- a) sitting
- b) lying down
- c) lying down and listening through ear-phones.

—Again note all observations.

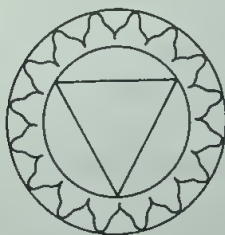
VII. Listen to an unpleasant sound:

- Have someone make an unpleasant sound such as scratching on a piece of glass.
- Repeat three or four times for just a few seconds.
- Write down reactions at once.

VIII. Listen to sounds of:

- different bells for a period of between 5 to 7 minutes each.
- Write down reactions after each.
- Note if listening was done with eyes open or closed and if there was a difference.

The Viśuddha Cakra controls the sense of hearing. These exercises will help the aspirant to understand the filters that prevent the hearing of pure sound and that prevent communication. Following instructions, which is necessary on the Path of Kuṇḍalinī as in all walks of life, presupposes the ability to listen.





## Synthesis of the Viśuddha Cakra

At this point the aspirant who has faithfully practiced the given exercises will have proved the value of *knowledge gained through practical experience*. For those who find the Path difficult, it has to be remembered that there is no easy route to a higher state of consciousness.

*Smoky purple  
color of the  
petals*

The symbols of the Cakra set out clearly the lessons to be learned at the level of the Viśuddha Cakra. In the colors of this Cakra we can recognize easily the coloring of what we hear in our own mind. The purple is a mixture of red and blue, red standing for life as we live it and blue for the spiritual. So the mixture is a combination of these two aspects. However, Sadāśiva is silver and gold. This shows how all symbols can be lifted to higher levels, from the very gross to the very high. The smoky color of the petals expresses symbolically that until we can really listen, clarity of thought and even clarity of understanding are not achieved.

*Clarity not yet  
achieved*

*The noose  
The fire  
The goad*

The noose is a warning not to be caught in the old traps of mechanicalness and intellectualization. The fire of emotion shows that rebellion and opposition flare up easily. The goad urges us to plod on, doing what is necessary for the last part of the journey.

*Balance: the  
male and fe-  
male within*

The fine balance of reason and emotion, logic and intuition, tension and letting go, are expressed in the symbols of Śiva and Śakti with a clarity that is beyond doubt. These pairs of opposites, now balanced, become a unit and create the sensitivity which allows the overwhelming experience of hearing the Cosmic AUM. The Most High cannot be commanded and, if invited, will only come after we have prepared ourselves. We must surrender and wait patiently for this immense moment.

The number of the petals of the Lotus is now 16, meaning that language has increased. With the development of language, humans have become more clever but unfortunately not more wise. The aspirant will find that the intellect, through the exercises, has sharpened considerably and therefore can now cleverly talk one into or out of almost anything. Yet the aspirant is reminded that the petals belong to the Lotus, which is sacred. When all the smoke of the ego is gone and complete surrender to listening is accomplished, one can truly hear the message, be it audible or inaudible. When the clever aspects of the mind and speech are overcome, the struggle with the ensuing temptations will be less intense.

*Increase in  
language*

The white elephant shows by its color the spiritual intention of the aspirant's way of life, thinking, and action. The elephant, reappearing from the Mūlādhāra Cakra, is considerably subdued. Only one of the trunks is held up—one more obstacle to overcome. The elephant has also shrunk in size. The obstacle has become smaller, however, not necessarily less intense. The aspirant is no longer subject to the power of driving instincts.

*The elephant:  
one more  
obstacle*

Sadāśiva means Ever Śiva. He is ever present to the call of any devotee. He has the third eye of wisdom and five faces, the five senses. The five faces indicate such qualities as omniscience, omnipotence, and omnipresence. Ten arms symbolize efficiency in dealing with difficulties. He is the Compassionate Lord. His body is clothed in a tiger skin and garlanded with snakes, which represent evil and wisdom, both of which can assail the aspirant. The skin of a tiger is used for spiritual practice to insulate the Sādhaka or aspirant from the influence of the vibrations of the earth which keep one earthbound. The aspirant may even sleep on the tiger skin (or pure wool) to preserve energy and assist efforts to go beyond all the influences of the earth and the many tempting fruits of life itself. The tiger skin is a symbol of the

*Sadāśiva:  
efficiency in  
dealing with  
difficulties*

power that has to be developed to resist such influences and yet stimulate sufficient enthusiasm to pursue the difficult Path.

*Abhaya-  
mudrā*

The gesture abhaya indicates that the sincerity and humility of the aspirant will dispel all unnecessary fears.

*The snake:  
symbol for  
wisdom and  
for temptation*

Lord Śiva is often shown with a hooded snake, the cobra. The snake approaches in silence. So it is with wisdom, but also with temptation. The cobra is considered the king of all snakes and reminds the aspirant to be observant, to consider carefully every move and how intelligent discrimination in all experiences must be used.

*Daily diary:  
differentiate  
between  
reason and  
intuition*

The daily diary is most important because it will help to show the difference between the two functions of intuition and reasoning, to know when intuition is operating and when it is simply wishful thinking. The process continues of reviewing and adjusting ideals and making sure that the daily practice is stressing the areas that require development and refinement. The perception of the results and new insights provide the enthusiasm to continue the practice.

*Thought  
association*

When listening to a story, events, special happenings, mind the interpreter immediately uses the opportunity to allow its own past events to be triggered. This becomes particularly clear when the mind replays what it has heard when there is no more outside interference, when the aspirant is alone and can watch what happens in the mind.

In the state of sleep-dream, pictures are seen and voices may be heard. Only when there is "clear listening" will one be able to hear voices in the state of sleep-dream. Not only are such dreams very important, carrying meaningful messages, but they are also little signposts of gentleness, peace of mind, courageousness, and forgiveness. When the "voice of the Self" or the still, small voice within is heard and given



attention, recognition, and gratitude, the aspirant can truly be said to be in touch with the Higher Self, which is now given back its rightful rulership. It is again like listening to the conch shell with surrender. One cannot tell the conch shell what sound it should produce.

*Contact with  
the Higher  
Self*

It would be wise here to investigate thought associations that spring up mechanically. These can be subdued, if they are of a nuisance nature, by the practice of Mantra in an audible way. The time for Mantra practice could be increased. All the garbling noises in the mind are first subdued, then discouraged, and then eliminated. Instead of fighting those mental background noises of the mind or the intruding thought associations, the energy is rather put into the practical application of Mantra.

*Mantra elim-  
inates thought  
associations*

Voices, pleasant or unpleasant, from the past, that means from early childhood, can surface because of a certain intensity connected with them. Also voices from a past life can re-emerge.

Yoga is a path of evolution and, while the physical body may have at one time emerged from the apes and developed to its present state of perfection, that process may have been necessary so that the body and the brain, in particular, could become a vehicle for increased consciousness. It seems that nature always provides before the need arises. A mother already has the milk before the baby is born. So man seems to have a sufficient mass of brain for the next stage of development.

*Yoga: the  
path of  
evolution*

Birth and death simply mean that a body is created and at some future time dies, and will again be re-created. Birth and death are "actions" born of desire to create. Desire is the cause of all "birth." Mind-born, then, simply means "idea-desire-manifestation." One purpose of rebirth is to fulfill all desires.

*Reincarnation*

*Idea-desire-  
manifestation*

With regard to genius, for example, the groundwork that has been laid in other lifetimes provides

the basis for full development in this life. This may appear in childhood when there can be a great love for music, for some instrument, and the evidence of unusual talent and perfect pitch. While these gifts are brought over from the past, the energy must originate in this lifetime. One may also in the present life reach only the first level of genius or potential genius. Therefore, when the desire is held alive at the time of death, the circumstances of rebirth will be such that the unfoldment of what has already been gained can come from budding into full flowering.

*Dreams of  
past lives*

Dreams play a part of increasing importance and the experience of significant past lives may appear first as dreams to prepare the aspirant. Those past lives are indications of what has been left undone, so that the mistakes can be corrected in this life.

*Subdue the  
ego but keep  
human dig-  
nity intact*

The ego is responsible for all the pain we experience. But we must come to a realization that the Self is Divine and its vehicle, the human body and mind, deserves respect. Therefore, when we are constantly trying to subdue the ego, we must use careful discrimination to keep intact our human dignity. This requires great perception, as the line of balance is as fine as a hair.

*Emotions  
color the  
Energy*

The power or Energy is neutral. Emotions give it the color of expression. Self-will and indulgence motivate emotions and bring pain. Unresolved problems and anxieties have to be dealt with directly and unemotionally.

*Negative  
emotions*

Negative emotions such as hostility and resentment should not be suppressed. It is better to deal with them thoroughly, come to grips with them, and direct awareness into the area from which they spring. If they are expressed against another person, the ego is strengthened and it will be impossible to ever achieve peace of mind and to come to inner harmony. *The ego is the worst taskmaster.* It judges, condemns, criticizes oneself and others. Life is black or white,

*The ego: a  
taskmaster*

good or bad. And so is the “wearer” of the ego, living between punishment and reward.

It is seldom suspected that feelings of worthlessness and helplessness often derive from not getting one’s own way. “My opinion is not appreciated. I am not important enough.” It should not matter if you truly “know in the heart” your own intrinsic worth. The greater the awareness of your own Divinity, the less you are subject to the demands of the ego. Then you can open yourself to learning, free to acknowledge the fact that you do not need to know everything.

The ego, in its unchecked need to assert itself, becomes possessive, thus preventing any true feeling of love. Many people can only accept or believe in love in ways that they themselves determine, thereby *preventing* the expression of a true feeling in themselves or in another.

*Possessiveness*

*The ego is teachable.* It can be taught new concepts that are more beneficial. In the early stages of development substitutes are often the only way. It is like giving up a habit such as smoking and indulging in something else instead. One can and must be constantly aware of the choice of the way in which energy is used. One way of recognizing the choice is to first become aware of and list all habitual, mechanical thinking, acting, and evaluating.

*Choice in the use of energy*

Ego is like a rope made of many strands—pride, greed, illusions, self-importance, desires, passions, cravings. The sacred Texts mention nine types of pride:

- 1) in one’s physique and strength
- 2) in one’s intellect
- 3) in one’s morals and virtues
- 4) in one’s psychic powers
- 5) in one’s spirituality
- 6) in one’s noble birth, social status
- 7) in one’s wealth and possessions

*Nine types of pride*



- 8) in one's beauty, handsomeness
- 9) in one's talents, power of command



*Inter-  
dependence  
of body and  
mind*

The interdependence of body and mind must also be recognized in the aspects of material (bodily), mental (abstract), and ethereal (spiritual). The aspirant will by now comprehend the use of Mantra in bringing these aspects together. The practice of Mantra (refined speech), the Divine Word, undergoes a process of becoming inaudible on its own account. Audible recitation improves the listening capacity and so this should be stressed rather than reciting the Mantra mentally. Only when the listening capacity reaches a certain point will the *Mantra become self-generating*.

*Practice  
listening*

In the previous Cakra the aspirant's attention was directed to the useless conversations in the mind. The screens we put up to filter what we want to hear need to be removed in order to listen clearly to what others have to say and to what the inner or outer Guru says. By learning to listen and by practicing listening, we will know when words do not ring true, even those in our own heads.

*Hearing, as  
expressed in  
speech*

It is fascinating to see how hearing and listening are used in daily language, which makes it clear that there is support for our need to listen.

- turn a deaf ear
- up to my ears (with work)
- I was all ears (intense listening)
- perk up your ears (pay attention)
- in one ear and out the other (not listening)
- the walls have ears (spying)
- bend your ear (talk a lot)
- music to my ears (something one wants to hear)
- to sound him out (to test his reaction)
- to hear her out (to hear all she has to say)

The old saying that as a man thinks, so he becomes, still holds true. Every thought has its own mental image. It is possible to put into the mind the image of what one would like to be and to use autosuggestion to achieve some desired quality. In the case of eradicating a negative characteristic, phrase the suggestion in a positive way emphasizing the goal to be achieved. For example, criticism is not overcome by telling oneself, "I shall not criticize." In fact, one becomes more critical because the emphasis is on the word criticize. The goal is achieved by saying, "I will be more accepting of people."

*Suggestion*

*Auto  
suggestion*

The use of the word "should" raises our deep-seated resentments of old authority figures, therefore, use positive suggestions such as "I am going to . . ." or "I will . . ." which indicate a firm decision.

The average person is very suggestible. A good way to become conscious of this in yourself is to watch for it first in other people. Clear thinking and discrimination help you to see the influence of the power of suggestion. Awareness is the mirror-like quality by which one can establish one's true identity.

Let us consider what is meant in the Mantra of the Divine Light Invocation by, "I am created by Divine Light." When we make this statement, we have to clarify to ourselves what it means, otherwise it is utter nonsense. We do not want to become parrots and just repeat the words (even though the repetition, in the course of many years, would also bear fruit). Hence we must think about it and understand it on a level which goes beyond the words. Feelings and emotions must also be involved, that is, the understanding should be on more than an intellectual level.

*Identification*

When I say, "I am created by Divine Light," I must know that at this moment I am not identifying myself with my physical body. I am identifying with the source of my being, with that creative Energy to which some of us give the name "God."

*Divine Light  
Invocation*

The big problem for many people is not having

a meaningful identification. *With what do you identify?* Is it your body? Then, are you only a body? If you are not the body, are you the mind? The mind has countless personality aspects. If you identify with the mind you have to identify with one of the personality aspects which is in the foreground at the time. In a moment this can shift to another personality aspect. What security is there in this?

When you identify with anything other than your Higher Self, you make a very serious error which at some time you will have to rectify. The wrong identification will bring a number of negative consequences. When you identify with another person, only one small part of you is involved. It is one personality aspect which you recognize both in yourself and the other. For example, the personality in you that is jealous identifies with that aspect of jealousy in another person. It is not necessary to identify in this way in order to understand the other person. You must recognize that jealousy is a negative characteristic belonging to one personality aspect shared by you and the other person, and in no way expressive of the Higher Self. Knowing this should give you an understanding of yourself and a true sympathy with the other person. Beware of making any such identification, because in so doing you denounce your truly Divine nature.

*Time for  
maturity and  
responsibility*

In the beginning of the Path of Kuṇḍalinī Yoga one is like a spiritual baby under special Grace. Now the time has come for maturity. The expression "flowing with it" does not mean not caring, but includes acceptance of responsibility.

*Finer feelings  
develop*

Life becomes more steady because the aspirant has become more gentle and more modest. From the Heart Lotus peace of mind spreads and because of self-control there is a freedom from greed, malice, and pride. The aspirant has become courageous and forgiving. The feelings (refined emotions) are now truly a steppingstone towards compassion. However,



it should be remembered that the Cakras have been explained as levels of consciousness and that each Cakra has many levels.

If, by this stage, you decide that you really do need a Guru, it must be remembered that to find out if a cake is good, it must be tasted. Philosophizing about the recipe or psychoanalyzing the cook still leaves you in the dark about the cake and its taste. To recognize your Guru you must study the Teachings yourself and practice in daily life what the Teachings direct.

*Need for a  
Guru*

As has been stated, surrender is necessary to be able to truly listen. Surrender has to be practiced first in the physical, in the body, by learning to relax completely. Surrender to the flow of breath coming in by itself, flowing out by itself. To flow with the breath of life is to do so with discrimination, not resignation. Then, as has been pointed out, the mind will also become still. As discrimination and sense perception become refined, intuition will flow as never before. The still, small voice within may now be heard. The passion of activity no longer destroys these Divine insights. All passionate activity is tempered by love that has a Divine quality and whatever interference from old personality aspects there might be, at this point the aspirant is more skillful in handling the battle-axe, to sharpen it and to cut away the appendages by determination and will.

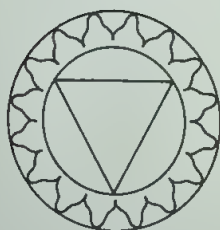
*Practicing  
surrender*

Once again the lower nature will put up a furious fight. The ego, having been in charge for so long, is now seen in the proper light. It will be observed to be merciless, never allowing a response to the inner being. This is the moment to take careful aim with the arrow again, see that the target is well-defined, the decision for directness made, and the bow strung to the right degree of tension, not too much, not too little, to hit the target. The ego must not be allowed to distort the aim.

*Lower nature  
puts up a fight*

*Closing the  
circle of  
perfection*

The control of the energies of this Cakra will close the circle of perfection. The physical surrender as in the corpse āsana (savāsana) means that the balance of body, mind, and speech, as represented in the trident, is nearing completion—the awareness of the body and the awareness of the mind and its manifestation in speech. Having become spine conscious, the interplay of the forces on a tamasic, rajasic, and sattvic level can now be observed. Straight thinking, straight actions, directness are the results which are expressed in the physical composure and in the manner of mind and speech. There is no longer the need to divide up and set out the exercises because at this point the aspirant will understand the blending of the senses and their manifestation, thereby perceiving the adjustments necessary for perfect balance.



## Thoughts on Ego and Responsibility

Habitual thinking patterns are interconnected with emotions and are never questioned by the average person. They are symptoms of anxious protection of unproven beliefs and result in questionable word games. One of the traps is exaggeration, which the ego uses as a trick (consciously or unconsciously) to achieve a more favorable position, to defend its beliefs. The aspirant who has learned to keep emotions under control will observe that wild statements are intended to trick the opponent for the satisfaction of the ego. Irrelevant objections, minor details in discussions, may be the manifestation of a certain type of ego, revealing an aggressive, dishonest trickery, sometimes in an attempt to ridicule, sometimes in a desire to win at all costs. The aspirant is warned not to be caught in word games of this kind, which are deadly games. To admit ignorance is to be strong, while to pretend to know is weakness.

The aspirant, at this point, is also warned that to be convinced for emotional reasons is dangerous. That applies to general life as well as to spiritual life. The aspirant who is not secure through proper reasoning and personal experience can be too easily manipulated either by someone of magnetic personality, or by one's own inverted ego. There must be control of emotions expressed in speech and thought. Debating points in one's own mind is not wrong necessarily, but it should be watched for dishonesty. Listening to the still, small voice (the Devī) brings clarification quickly and changes old thinking patterns and habitual mental conversations.

Audible sound (the spoken word) and inaudible

*Habitual  
thinking  
patterns*

*Word games*

*Reasoning  
and  
experience*

*Creation*



sound (the spoken word in the mind) are both vibrations which will give rise to creation. *What creation comes into being is the responsibility of the originator of that sound.*

## Thoughts on Kuṇḍalinī

*Stirring of  
Kuṇḍalinī  
Energy*

The snake around the neck of Sadāśiva and the trident in His hand indicate for the first time the possible stirring of the Kuṇḍalinī Energy. The fire He holds, which is also symbolic of Kuṇḍalinī, reminds us that *"ignorance is burned in the fire of wisdom."* Such, then, is the Kuṇḍalinī Fire. It is a fire of awareness which burns ignorance so that life takes on a new meaning and all previous concepts are burned up. It turns the individual upside-down, into a new being. Some Scriptures speak of being clothed with a new garment. Others speak of being touched by the Divine Light, or having Divine Mother reveal Herself in splendor. This experience may be of minutely detailed intricacy or it may suddenly sweep one to a panoramic Vision of Light. One is left humbled and awed. There are no words.

*Importance of  
character  
building*

It now becomes evident why the character building of the previous Cakras is so important. In the early stages the aspirant's development is a matter of awareness and of dumping those concepts that can be let go without any emotional upset. This first state of awareness may have allowed the aspirant to recognize and deal with more complicated and deep-seated beliefs, which might bring such a feeling of release that certain psychic manifestations may result. This is not Kuṇḍalinī. What it means is that we have become more skillful in dealing with the sensations that exist in daily life. As an illustration, if I drive a little

Volkswagen and then I buy a Lincoln, even though I have felt very comfortable with my little Volkswagen, I will now have to make adjustments for the steering, parking, speed, size, etc., of the big, new car. But when I have learned to maneuver it, I will be in control of a vehicle of much greater power and quality.

To assure this kind of control, clarification of one's mind is necessary. By accepting the exercises in this book, skill and awareness will be built up that will enable the aspirant to handle any experiences that come without anxiety.

In the pursuit of Kuṇḍalinī a true Guru will warn against developing exclusively in one area. In other words, if intellect has been developed at the cost of the senses and particularly the emotions, even the greatest intellect will be unable to handle the impact of the emotions when they strike. It is for that reason that the emphasis is on the equal development of the five senses, with particular attention to the mind, which is the operator at the control station of all sense perception.

The Higher Self may announce or signal this stirring of the Kuṇḍalinī Energy ahead of time in dreams. Therefore, it is again stressed to carefully watch dreams and be consistent in noting them down. We may not understand the message of a dream, but the Higher Self derives its energy and wisdom from the Universal Intelligence, and it will find other ways and means of sending the message it intends us to have. We must pay great attention to dreams and all insights so the message will not be missed.

When the Kuṇḍalinī Energy stirs there is indeed a change in temperature in the body, but it is not like a high fever or an unnatural body heat, although there have been situations where that was the case. It all depends on the preparations that have been made. The many mental acrobatics, the training of

*Control by  
clarification*

*Development  
in all areas*

*Dreams may  
announce  
Kuṇḍalinī  
stirring*

*Change in  
body  
temperature*

the mind, are necessary to make the mind and the senses, as well as the central nervous system, pliable to deal with those incredible realities.

*Is psychic  
energy  
Kuṇḍalinī?*

The question arises of whether the source of information a psychic receives is Kuṇḍalinī Energy. This would only be true if the term "Kuṇḍalinī" were used to mean all life. Then, even functioning on the level of unawareness would be Kuṇḍalinī, which would make it more difficult to understand Kuṇḍalinī as a latent power within each individual or, as the old Texts call it, "the coiled-up serpent." The many exercises for the attainment of the manifestation of psychic energy and spiritual experiences show that the psychic can only function within the realm of his own development of the senses and the mind. So, again we conclude, this is not Kuṇḍalinī.

*Experiencing  
lights*

Experiencing lights when in a meditative state is not Kuṇḍalinī, but can be taken as encouragement that one is on the right road. These experiences should be carefully observed as they are indications of the development towards the unfolding of the potential that is within everyone.

*Different  
schools of  
thought*

The many schools of thought concerning Kuṇḍalinī make for confusion rather than clarification. However, Kuṇḍalinī is the essential Energy in each, and the means of reaching that state of consciousness is irrelevant. Once a path is chosen, the process becomes important and the steps laid out must be followed with care.

*Any part is  
incomplete*

Any Yoga singled out by itself is taking a part out of the whole and, as with any part, it is incomplete. The encouragement to sexual indulgence, alleged to be the purpose of the Kāmasūtra by some who teach Kuṇḍalinī Yoga, is to be regretted because it means ripping out from a very beautiful and delicately balanced system some small detail and considering it the whole. It is not indulgence in sex that the Kuṇḍalinī Energy encourages. However beautiful sex may be, it does not open the door to a state of higher con-



sciousness. If that were so, the majority of people who believe in sexual excesses would all have achieved enlightenment.<sup>8</sup>

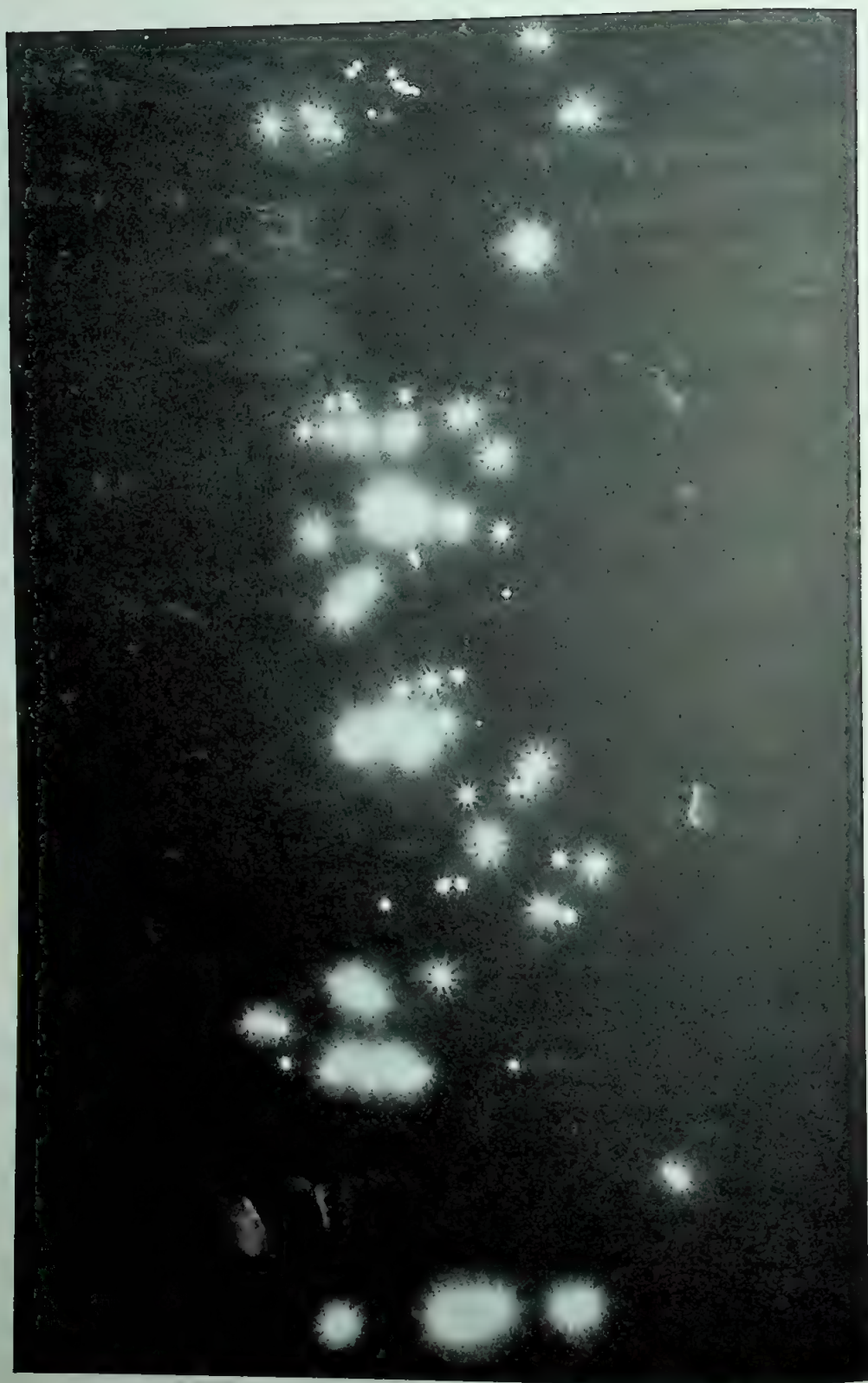
The part that brahmacaryā plays in spiritual development can be more easily understood if we use money as a symbol for spiritual power and its hoped-for manifestation. We often scatter energy in the same way that we scatter money and it is only by holding together a large amount of either one that a large project can be undertaken.

Kuṇḍalinī will have to be pursued according to the aspirant's own natural inclinations. When all the groundwork has been done, when quality has been brought into other aspects of life, which itself is a development of human potential, and when the fringe benefits have been renounced (psychic manifestations), Kuṇḍalinī will begin to stir because it has been safely awakened. In the process of doing the exercises, the control of desires and all sense perceptions has increased, inner security has developed, and therefore the awakening of Kuṇḍalinī will not be a frightening, but a blissful experience.<sup>9</sup>

*Safe awaken-  
ing of  
Kuṇḍalinī*

The mythology of many a culture has strenuously tried to explain not only the purpose of life but what is this God/Energy. Modern scientists continue to question this, and for each the answer is expressed differently. The human mind cannot determine what Cosmic Energy is; it can only study its manifestation. This manifestation can be brought about in oneself and studied there. Whatever the Energy is—It can only reveal Itself.

*The light of the sun reveals all things,  
but the light of the sun can only reveal itself.*



## Meditation on The Light

Sit in a comfortable position or in any yogic posture, but with your ankles crossed. Close your eyes, focus them on the space between the eyebrows. Do not start until your body is quiet (perhaps with the help of a little *prāṇāyāma*).

In previous chapters you have become aware of the necessity of being spine conscious. Feel your spine and as you straighten it out, putting vertebra on vertebra, see at the base of your spine a Lotus bud slowly open and, like a dew drop, a tiny pinpoint of Light slowly emerging from it . . . floating in the very center of the spine, in that hollow part, up and up and up, passing through the respective places of the other Lotuses, finally floating to the place where the spine joins the head . . . and in a gentle curve (like a shepherd's crook) this tiny pinpoint of Light floats over the pituitary and pineal. In your mind's eye see a flash of Light illuminating the brain matter, becoming again the pinpoint of Light and travelling back the same way, making the gentle curve, meeting the spine and floating gently and slowly in the very center of the hollow of the spine, passing through all the Lotuses, down to the very first one. When it has touched the center of that Lotus, the four petals close as if to protect something very precious. Stay quiet and allow to come to you whatever delicate intuitive perception may want to arise. Let it happen. If nothing specific happens that is fine too. Let yourself be absorbed in that beautiful feeling, deep peace, and harmony.

Do this exercise not more than once a day. This will prevent the forcing open of the Lotuses. The experience of the arising of the Kuṇḍalinī Energy can take place in such small steps, so gently, as never to upset or jar you into any anxiety. Also, it takes time to reach the ability to concentrate, and be so alert and yet so relaxed at the same time. Patience and perseverance will lead to an unfoldment that can be, if the instructions are followed as given, a very beautiful experience that gives a sense of knowing of the Divine. In terms of religion, let us remember that all saints tell us that man cannot command God. To pursue the Most High we may have to learn to wait in humility.



*I venerate Him who is residing in the Ājñā Cakra of yours. I worship (revere) the highest Śambhu in your Ājñā Cakra, flanked by the highest intelligence (She), Him who has the splendor of millions of suns and moons. He who worships by propitiating with devotion will reside in the world of the Light of all lights, which is in the world, which no earthly glance can reach and is far removed from the glance of ordinary mortals. There neither sun nor moon shines, neither fire nor the other heavenly bodies.*

MANTRA FOR THE ĀJÑĀ CAKRA

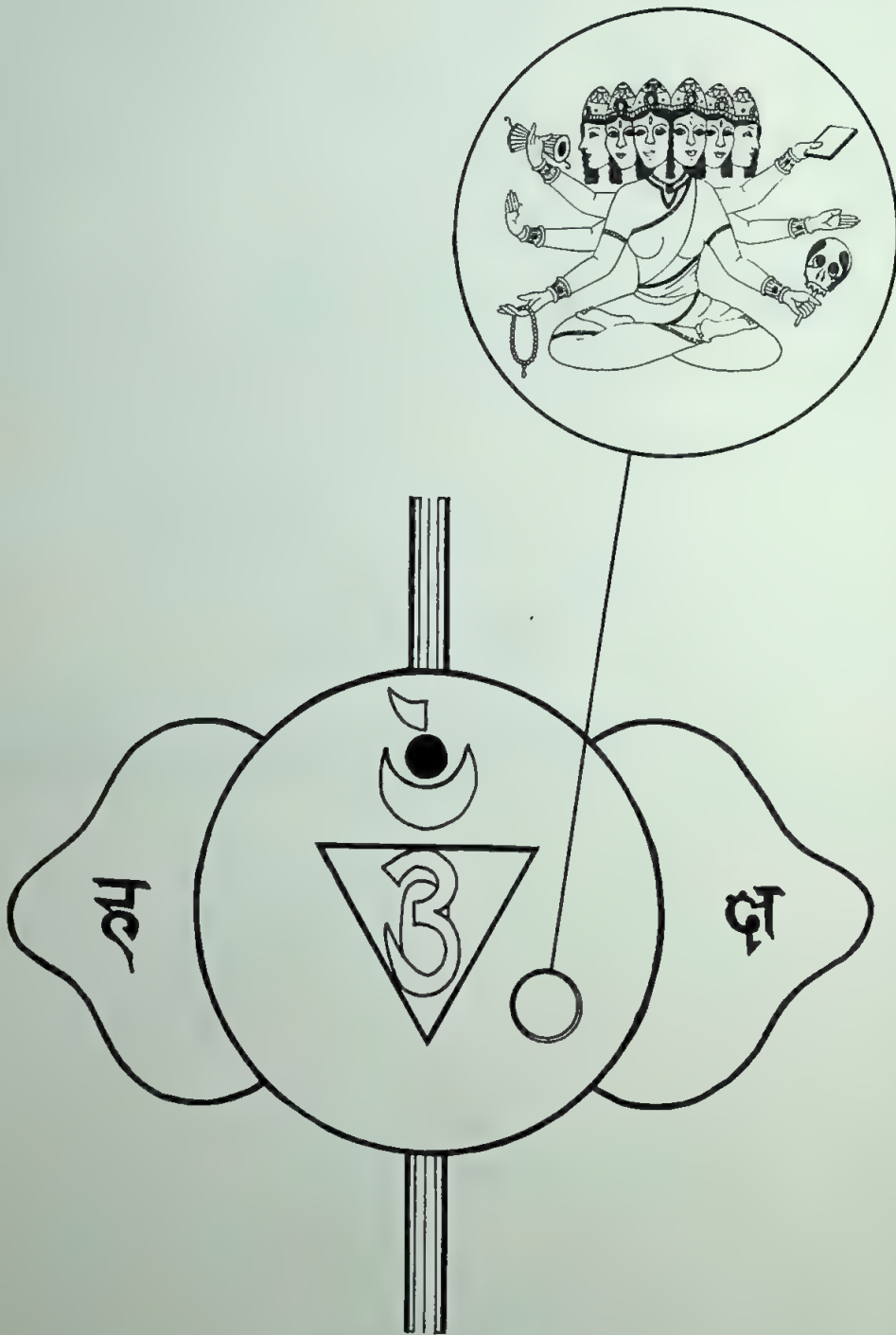
## Chapter Nine



*Ājñā*

The Sixth Cakra

GOD/GODDESS: Śakti Hākinī



Ājñā Cakra



# Ājñā

## The Sixth Cakra and its Symbols

ĀJÑĀ: The Sixth Cakra or Lotus.

TATTVA: Differentiating faculty.

64 RAYS: Relate to the region of the mind, ether (ākāśa).

The six senses, including the mind, are now like rays penetrating the four corners of the world.

DHYĀNA—Meditation: Expressed at the Ājñā Cakra.

TWO Lotus Petals: The Lotus is sacred.

The two petals are symbolic for the functioning of the mind (manas) in two worlds of reality, the manifest and the unmanifest, but also for the pineal and pituitary and for Īḍā and Piṅgalā, which unite at this point.

COLOR of the Petals: White.

THE LETTERS on the Petals: KṢAM—HAM.

CIRCLE: Perfection at its highest level.

TRIANGLE: Golden. Within the triangle is the Yoni with a śivaliṅga called Itara, white with streaks of lightning—Power, Energy.

The triangle is symbolic of the workings of the Energy in its pure state and in its manifested state, for which sex is the expression commonly known to man. Reproduction is no

longer of a child, not even a Divine Child, but of the cosmic nature.

**QUARTER MOON:** Vortex of Energy. Consciousness manifests most subtly.

**BĪJĀ—Seed Sound:** OM̐ (Prāṇava). Mahānāda. Supreme sound.

**BINDU:** Golden dot. Essence of Energy.

The bindu symbolizes complete detachment from the body by either the male or female, a precondition to be able to use mind in other than habitual or known ways.

**PRESIDING DEITY:** Paramaśiva (Śambhu). Śiva in His highest aspect.

**PINGALĀ:** The Nāḍī on the right side of the body.

**ĪDĀ:** The Nāḍī on the left side of the body.

**SUṢUMNĀ:** The central channel of the spine.

**CITRIṆĪ:** Three in one (sattva, rajas, tamas).

Body, mind, and speech. CMC (concentration, meditation, and contemplation).

**GOD/GODDESS:** Śakti Hākinī: The aspect of the union of Energy manifest and unmanifest.

The intelligence on this level is symbolized in unity.



Śakti Hākinī has six faces and six arms. Mind has increased in power and subtlety, as symbolized by the six faces, while the six arms indicate high efficiency level. The Yogi or Yoginī, having reached this level, becomes a Siddha, one who has acquired the power that goes with these experiences.

## OBJECTS:

*Vidyā—Book:*

The book is symbolic for knowledge retained.

*Gesture:* Vara(da)—granting boons.

Abhayamudrā—dispelling fears.

More spiritual gifts and granting boons, intuitive insights or perception by the various senses are possible. Fears are dispelled through the increased knowledge from personal experience. The control of imagination allows the discovery by the aspirant that all experiences are the creation of the mind.

*Damaru—Drum:*

The drum indicates that the beat, the rhythm, of life must go on and the Yogi or Siddha must remain on earth long enough to show the Path to others.

*Khaṭvāṅga—Staff with skull on top:*

The skull, previously symbolic for the empty mind, is now symbolic for the attainment of a mind with awesome powers, never before anticipated. If intuitive perception is retained these powers will be used for the benefit and the blessings of others.

*Mālā—Rosary:*

Mantra is becoming a self-generating power.

The Mantra's self-generating power has to be maintained. Each bead on the rosary is symbolic for the past lives as they have been strung together, exerting their influence to a small or large degree, painfully or joyfully, to bring about the present state. Again, sound is brought to its highest expression, as in Prāṇava OM.





## Ājñā Cakra

*Point of  
"no return"*

In the Sixth Cakra, if the highest level within the Cakra is reached, one can speak of a "point of no return." Imagine what it means when there is nothing left to enjoy — no food, sex, success or power, but simply a feeling of neutrality about everything. What does life hold after all pleasures have gone? A new choice comes at that point. One may leave the earth by allowing the body to die or, as some Yogins have done, withdrawing the life force consciously, at will. Or one may stay on and help others to reach the same state by encouraging non-attachment to the pleasures that keep one bound to the wheel of life which goes round and round. But if one stays on, or takes on another incarnation, it is with the decided purpose of helping others to become free from the entanglements and the pursuing of the wrong goals, to help others to see that even success exists only in the minds of those who need to feed their self-importance. It is like the artificially high price of the diamond, decided by men in power, and thereby not being the true worth. What value has this in comparison with freedom from all limitations, inner harmony, and peace of mind?

*Mental energy*

Mental energy through the practice of self-mastery is now observed in many areas and on different levels. The daily reflecting has increased awareness and will still be the guide for deciding where one's energy is wasted or locked up. Knowledge has been gained by personal experience. Here in the Sixth Cakra that knowledge may include the knowing of the time of death by inner perception. Death is understood now as the physical returning to the vortex of Energy until some other time when it decides to manifest again. The physical body, then, is a tool for what by now we can truly term spiritual life, a tool that is used in each lifetime for spiritual evolution.

By inner perception also comes the knowledge of the Truth that has been voiced by all saints. Yoga, being the Path of Liberation, brings freedom from the merry-go-round activity of the ego-mind, strength to listen to the inner being with intuition, and perception of the finer forces and their expression, of which the ether is only a symbol. Śakti, the Devī of Speech, is now understood in terms of the Language of the Gods and makes Herself known through this inner communication, intuitive perception, and increased awareness.

*Knowledge of  
Truth*

The First and Sixth Cakras, linked by the Suṣumnā and the two nāḍīs, will now be recognized as the areas where the interplay of forces takes place. The understanding of this interplay of forces is a knowing from experience instead of just an intellectualization. The Suṣumnā is the path in which the Energy can move freely. Self-mastery gives control of the Light, the ability to increase or decrease its brightness.

*Link between  
the First and  
Sixth Cakras*

During meditation, which by now is the natural outgrowth of daily reflection, all colors and all images will slowly disappear and the mind will perceive only the colorless White Light, the White Light which indicates formlessness. The mind, which in the beginning created in a compulsive manner and not for one's benefit, has learned to focus itself and has taken on only one direction, towards the White Light that is symbolic for the Great Void. The mind now is resting in IT.

*The White  
Light*

So the door to the Seventh Cakra, the exit, is opened. The physical body may become weakened, or illness may be the reason for death. When the Yogin withdraws the life force, the Prāṇa is placed into the ABODE. The body passes away peacefully. There is neither joy nor sorrow. It is all finished and there is no need to be born again.

*The exit*

*The drop has returned to the ocean.*

## Concentration Exercise

Concentration exercises are to be done in an alert yet relaxed manner for maximum results.

If the Divine Light Invocation has been practiced with attention the aspirant will have achieved a degree of concentration and noticeable benefits from this exercise. A further step is the concentration on one's physical form by limiting the perception of the eyes (sight) and seeing beyond the form.

Exercise:  
*Filling the  
spine with  
Light*

1. Sit in meditation posture (alternate to standing).
2. Focus on the space between the eyebrows.
3. Imagine the spine being a hollow tube.
4. See this tube as being of glass. You can see through it.
5. Fill this tube with brilliant White Light.
6. Fill the bottom first.
7. Hold this image as long as you comfortably can.
8. Repeat often till it becomes easy.
9. Check after each practice the notes of your well-being. When all is absolutely satisfactory, add attention to your breath.

The following procedure will prove helpful.

1. Imagine that with every inhalation you take in White Light.
2. With every exhalation, you focus on the "level" of that Light.





## Synthesis of Ājñā Cakra

Here in the Sixth Cakra it is time for the aspirant to make a reassessment. The circle is complete, perfection is almost achieved. Mind has increased in subtlety and power, its mysteries becoming more comprehensible because of the foundation that has been laid. It was an arduous task and it is not ended. The foundation has been laid for the next phase, like learning the alphabet and grammar necessary to write the poetry that you feel is somewhere inside. There is a feeling of exhilaration in the knowing from experience—a feeling of independence. So do not give up. Keep going, keep going! Remember . . . only the gods can walk the rainbow. Reach for a little more of the god and a little less of the human!

*Circle of  
perfection*

The sexual self has come into focus, and the Cosmic unity, which stands in contrast to the over-individualization of sex in today's world, is no longer felt to be lost but possible. Ideas of reincarnation and the changes of sexes may still be unclear, but no longer rejected. Judgment is suspended on that point.

*Sexual self*

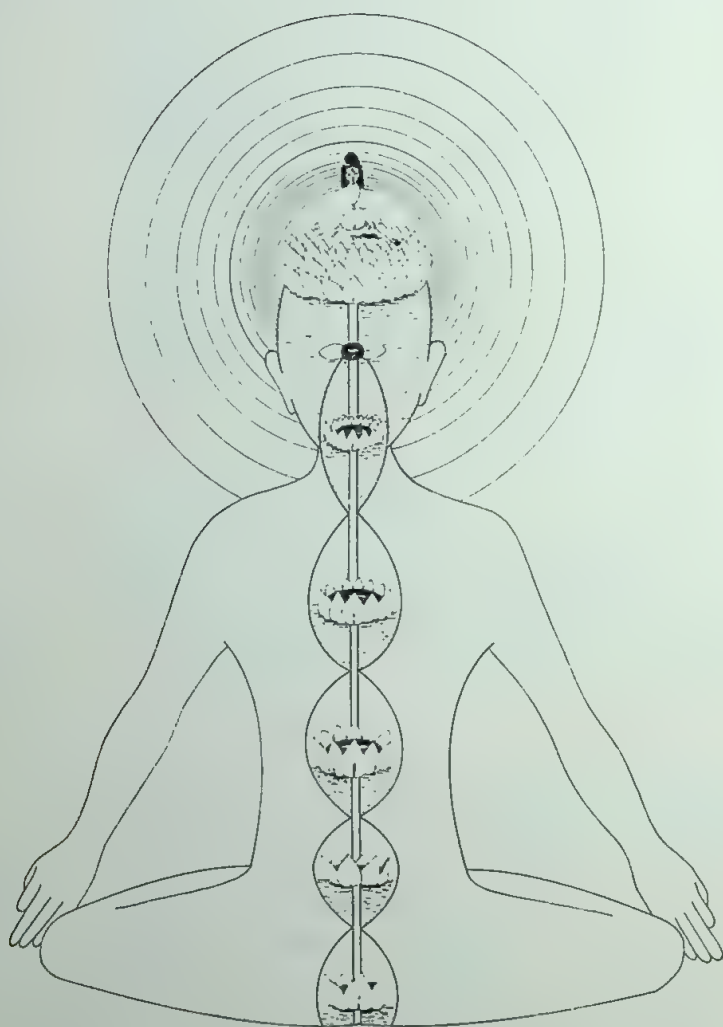
The Serpent, which has been "speechless," gently makes its presence known and, through the Devī of Speech, the aspirant has now acquired inner communication, intuitive perception, and an increased awareness. Many little things seem to fall into place, or drop away. They are just gone with no struggle, no special discipline. Yet, there is a strong feeling that is not entirely comfortable, a sort of fearful respect. Let that be so. Call it a holy fear. Do not slip back into old ways; always remember that your own sincerity protects you. Trust the Greater Power. Allow emotions of humility, reverence, and surrender to emerge. *The Serpent closes the circle.* Let your intuition guide you in this thought.

*Serpent*

The Ājñā-Guru communicates mind to mind. There may have been a preparation for this by hearing

*Ājñā-Guru*

# The Seven Chakras



© 1988 Bantam

## Levels of Consciousness

VIEW OF THE SPINE

somebody speak in a dream while you were asleep, or by seeing images, landscapes, people, or pictures in a dream. Then the ability comes to see and hear in the waking state through the same kind of perception without speech. This can happen only when speech is under control. Being in communication with the Higher Self is not the same as mental conversation, although it is a similar process. The response comes from your own Higher Self, or it might also come from a bodiless consciousness (a vortex of energy). When consciousness leaves the body it can see what is going on in a particular place. It can even project an image to someone in that place so that person knows, recognizes its presence.

The human eye can serve as a helpful illustration for this mental process. The eye has to make adjustments to focus on something close or far away. Let us assume that mind can do the same, that it can focus on something right in front and adjust to something in the far distance. In this way, communicating mind to mind between the Guru and disciple is very common. If the disciple's mind is fixed on the Guru, an imperceptible switch-over of consciousness takes place.

The symbol for nectar and ambrosia, the Amṛta, being cool and white, means that these Divine insights no longer excite the emotions, but you can now suspend judgment and wait for conclusions. You are better able to care, be responsive, and have gratitude; the cool and white mean that greediness and emotional indulgence no longer interfere with the feelings of pure joy now emerging from the Heart Center. These feelings are an expression of gratitude that your Higher Self has taken care of your needs.

*Amṛta: nectar  
and ambrosia*

At this stage love takes on a new quality which is so foreign and so unbelievable that the tendency is to think, "I cannot love anybody anymore." It takes a while to recognize that the new love is indeed pure and has become free from all self-indulgence, all pos-



sessiveness. This really means that you are slowly becoming master of yourself in some areas and have added more stones to this mosaic that you are trying to complete.

*Becoming all-knowing*

It is said at this point that one becomes all-knowing and all-seeing. You become all-knowing not by an undeserved act of grace, but because you have laid the foundation. You now know how much has had to be done to understand yourself, so it should be no surprise that in the Ājñā Cakra you do become all-knowing within your own life.

*Knowing the time of death*

You will have knowledge of the time of death by a dream, by receiving a message, or by seeing your own body dead. Death can be a conscious decision, "I have no particular attachments and I have nothing else to do. I will withdraw the life force."

You will begin to understand that reincarnation is a chain of cause and effect in the same way as you have observed in many other areas. What you call life is a day, and what you call death is a night. Each night is a waiting period in which you may pursue and embroider the desires which you brought from a previous life. If at the time of death you think, "I am not ready to die. I still haven't done this, and this, and this," these desires and hopes will propel you back into those circumstances in which you can fulfill them. If one life is not enough it will be a hundred or a hundred thousand. Now is the time to incorporate into your mind and anchor firmly the idea "I am ever growing into the Light."

Having become all-knowing within your own life allows you to understand others because human nature is not so different. Everyone has six senses, and human bodies all operate under the same law, so of course you are all-knowing. You can also develop one part of your mind to tap others, which allows you access to the knowledge in other people's minds.

Jyotir means Light, having visions of a high order. You can see other people's obstacles to realization by means of the Light. Looking at a dream, the whole life path of the dreamer will be revealed to you. It is Jyotir, the Light, that is all-seeing. This Light, emanating from the Mūlādhāra Cakra, has reached the Ājñā Cakra and now illuminates the mind. By becoming sensitive to the perception of the formless and colorless Supreme Light, the aspirant has been able to destroy the personality aspects so the energy can now go to the spiritual growth.

*Becoming  
all-seeing*

*Jyotir, the  
Light*

The communication between Guru and disciple, mind to mind, is through this Light. Practice of the Divine Light Invocation has helped to bring you to this point. You become a Yati, an advanced student, whose mind is resting intently on the Guru. The physical Guru is the steppingstone to the Guru within.

The Bīja, or seed sound, of this Cakra, OM (A-U-M), is the thirteenth vowel of the Sanskrit alphabet. It represents the life force, the universal sound.

*Bīja: OM*

The candra-maṇḍala means insight into nirvāṇa, or the six stages of samādhi. The goddess Śakti grants Divine Knowledge, an understanding of the message of the Divine Śāstras (scriptures), symbolized in the book She holds. The creative power of the Mūlādhāra Cakra, then expressed in sex, now in the Ājñā Cakra reaches its highest point. One can create a Mantra and imbue it with power. (However, such a Mantra will not be as powerful as a Mantra which was created, let us say, fifty thousand years ago and has many realized consciousnesses keeping it alive, who will come to your rescue if you falter.)

*Candra-  
maṇḍala*

It is said that the Great Void is served by all Devas. The Great Void is not an empty space. There is no empty space. Even in what we call space in the universe, there are all sorts of forces, attractions, and rays, besides the galaxies. So this means that the Devas (gods and goddesses) will serve the aspirant on all

*Great Void*

levels of consciousness, beyond the three dimensions we have filled with names and forms.

*Triangle*

The Great Void within the Triangle means that there is no manifestation perceptible to the senses. Creativity is no longer physical or artistic, but purely spiritual.

*Goddess*

*Hākinī:*

*creator and*

*destroyer*

The goddess Hākinī of this Cakra is the creator and destroyer. This means that all personality aspects have to be killed in order that the Higher Self may live. Without destroying the old person, a new one cannot be born.

Divine Mother Śakti has to keep the world going to allow rebirth for the lessons that have not yet been learned. When you have learned all lessons, you become indeed Her child and will do Her bidding. You may also be Her special servant and offer all Energy for use as She sees fit.

If you can create Divine Mother in your mind, this is creativity of the mind at its highest. But it must also be kept alive and allowed to take its own course. You create Divine Mother in everything that is most beautiful, most perfect, most forgiving—everything that you desire to become yourself. Having created Her in your mind, you allow Her to give you energy to destroy the personality aspects that are not in keeping with this Most High creation. This makes the energy from these personality aspects available, and you put it all back into your creation of Divine Mother so that it becomes bigger, more beautiful, and, strangely enough, more real. At one point it takes on a life of its own. Therefore, you must be extremely careful what you create and allow to take on life.

For this reason, never criticize your Guru because your Guru becomes embroidered by the creation of your mind. The Guru, on the other hand, in the process of becoming a Guru, has developed the habitual attitude of seeing only the Divine in others and disregards the negative interferences. The process of nurturing the spiritual potential of an



aspirant is the height of the creative powers, using that same energy which originates in the Mūlādhāra Cakra.

The two Lotus petals represent powers that work together. They are likened to two grains of rice in which the power is compressed, but mostly unused. The lesson to be learned here is in the form of an exercise. Take a grain of rice in your hand and look at it, keeping your eyes open until they almost water. Through this process you will begin to see auras, not colored auras but the white aura of Light. Then, recalling the exercise in the Maṇipūra Cakra in which you projected your own image against the sky, now you hold the rice between two fingers and hold it up to the sky.

*Two Lotus  
petals*

The single-pointed mind should be directed to Śiva (now properly known as Śākta) and Śakti as power. Śākta/Śakti is the source of Brahmā, to whom flows constantly a stream of nectar and ambrosia, of which He is the perfect receptacle. Śakti is power and Śākta is the source of power—the source of Light, the Light itself. But the source will never be discovered if nothing emanates. If Light emanates, then there has to be a source from which that Energy flows. These two have to be seen together. So with the grain of rice. Without the Energy, it will not sprout. You might be able to see the Energy as an aura of life force; see the life force and the grain at the same time. This is not really any longer symbolic, but can be seen directly as the one Power, Śākta/Śakti.

Śākta/Śakti is the constant stream of life energy and also Amṛta (nectar and ambrosia) which flow to the disciple who is seeking to understand.

When Śakti wishes to create, She divides Herself in two. On the right, Bindu, male—Haṃ; on the left, Visarga, female—Sā. She divides Herself into many. Therefore, as creator, I am also She. Haṃsa, the combination of male and female, can be translated not as “I am He” or “I am She,” but “I am That.

*Bindu*



Śākta (Śiva)/Śakti  
In Divine Union  
(author's collection)

That I am," power manifest and power unmanifest in one.

Śakti Hākinī has six heads and six arms. The power of the mind is so great it is like six minds put together, mental power at its highest state. Also, with the power of six arms, your practical efficiency has increased beyond normal limitations.

One of the objects She holds is the *ḍamaru*, the drum. The pulse, the beat of life is going on. Persuasion and temptation are always possible, so do not fool yourself.

The skull, reappearing, maintains the same message—emptiness of the mind. To continue the mind's habit of interpreting would be a big mistake. The need is not to learn new things, but to a-b-s-o-r-b Divine Nectar, as the body absorbs what it needs from food. Nectar and ambrosia are the spiritual food (the intuitive insights) that need to be absorbed, not analyzed or prejudged.

The *mālā* that is held, again associated with Mantra, shows that now the Mantra has been practiced to a degree where its power has become self-generating. What is that Mantra power that is self-generating? Turn your gaze towards the *vara(da)* gesture, the gesture of granting boons. Make that silent request . . . keep that thought alive. Then wait. The goddess promises that you will receive boons in proportion to the extent you practice Kuṇḍalinī Yoga.

The gesture *abhaya* of Śakti Hākinī means that all fears are now dispelled because of perfect knowledge. Having reached the level of consciousness of the Sixth Cakra, one need never be born again, one moves ever towards the Light. Excellence is now achieved with control of the mind.

The two petals of the Ājñā Cakra are sometimes compared to the pituitary and the pineal, which each have a specific purpose. Such a comparison, if helpful, should only be used temporarily and not be thought of in medical terms.

*Śakti Hākinī*

*Ḍamaru,  
the drum*

*Khaṭvāṅga—  
Staff with  
skull on top*

*Mālā*

*Vara(da)  
gesture*

*Abhaya*

*Two petals*

*Pineal and  
pituitary*



According to some schools of thought the pineal is the seat of memory which can be a curse or a blessing—a blessing when we can remember past mistakes, a curse when the memory stands in the way of learning something new. Everything is interpreted by the mind on the basis of what has already been stored in the memory of the pineal. At this particular level of intelligence and control, the pineal allows past lives to be brought into focus, if that is important, or even past events on a world scale.

The pituitary, in contrast, is called “the master gland” because, old Yogis say, it is capable of recharging the entire body and the mind on all its levels. It is here that Divine Mother Śakti has poured the greatest amount of energy and power for use in the daily life of the aspirant. If we want to understand this in familiar language, we can say that the pineal functions like the register. It has an enormous filing cabinet, but it is without the power of discrimination. Its purpose is simply to file and when commanded to do so, to recall and produce what has been filed. That part of the mind we could call the “subjective” mind, being incapable of inductive reasoning, while the pituitary can perhaps be likened to the “objective” mind that takes concepts of the objective world. The objective mind has under its control the five senses and is capable of reason.

*Subjective and  
objective mind*

*Circle at the  
center*

In the center that connects these two petals is the complete, beautiful circle. Here again the balance of the two is that neither overrides the other, and so the control can be given to the Self, perfect in itself. The Yogi calls it “resting in your own Ātman.” You can call it in a more familiar term, “functioning from my true Center.” The male and female aspects are shown as one. The golden dot represents the essence of all Energy that will, when understood properly, hold together the two petals and let them function in perfect conjunction with each other. Here is

*Bindu, the  
Essence of  
Energy*

the region of the mind most powerful, the mind being like the center of the spheres, the indicator.

To achieve that perfect balance is not easy. The objective mind needs a lot of training to discriminate what the subjective mind absorbs and collects into its own filing cabinet. Because of its capacity to surrender, the job that it is given will be simply that of the clerk in the court of all lives, to register correctly, not allowing any interpretation by the objective mind. This is a most difficult thing to do, because here, in the region of the mind, we have to investigate the mind to understand its functioning and purpose. And so the mind has to turn on itself. To hold the mind at bay, when it has been allowed to be the interpreter of all that passes through it for all of our lives, makes such investigation extremely difficult.

*Perfect  
balance*

If the pituitary is considered to have the power of reasoning, but in the early stages is not considered to have the wisdom to use and discriminate between reason or logic, and intuition, perhaps we can say that the objective mind needs to be trained to raise its level of development. One method of this would be laying the foundation and building character. The second stage would be spiritual. And the combination of the two brings wisdom which we may term "celestial." While many theories have been advanced about the mind, limitations are still accepted and numerous interpretations are of no help. As in the area of science, a complete new beginning, a hypothesis that may seem to be outrageous, can be a better start than simply re-interpreting existing ideas.

*Stages of  
development*

The subjective mind has an enormous reservoir of collected events, but is restricted in the assessment of what it has been collecting. When it does make itself known, this can result in a frightening experience. The fright comes from the objective mind that does not know what to do with that material. It is exactly this lack of understanding of the functioning

*Theories of  
mind*

of the subjective mind that creates many problems.

Suggestions and hypnosis are possible only when the objective mind has somehow been subdued. That is why it is necessary to achieve that perfect balance, where the objective mind is trained to handle properly, beneficially, the material that can be extracted or recalled by the subjective mind.<sup>10</sup>

## Exercises for the Ājñā Cakra

Perfection of prāṇāyāma, having resulted in steadiness of mind, is now combined with Mahāmudrā. The influence of Haṃsa moves all over the body, and the Yonimudrā, honored by all Yogis and Siddhas, is practiced. Haṃsa is merged with the Siddha in Prāṇa. The aspirant knows the time of death and joyfully places the Prāṇa in the abode of Viṣṇu (Ājñā Cakra) and passes away.

The exercise called Closing the House (Yonimudrā) should be practiced with the proper understanding and without the expectation of some sensational happening.

*Yonimudrā:  
Closing the  
House*

Sit erect, neck and head in a straight line. Place the left heel against the anus, the right heel on the left foot. With the lips form a crow's beak. Draw in air. Tightly close the ears by pushing the ear lobes into the openings with the thumb, cutting out the physical sounds. This is a subtle reminder that all mental sounds must also be stilled. Close the eyes with the index fingers, stopping them from moving and forming mental images. By closing the nostrils with the middle fingers, the perception of smell is eliminated. Keeping the lips closed and the little fingers on them means to keep mauna or silence. The doors of perception of the senses are now all closed, the mind set free to become single-pointed—to take one direction



towards the Most High. Mentally recite Hamsa (Ajapa Mantra).

Mahāmudrā, together with Kuṇḍalinī Prāṇāyāma (Kriyā), should be practiced on a regular daily basis. When a Guru gives instructions in this type of exercise (or the previous one, Closing the House) they are often called initiations. Each aspirant has to clarify the term "initiation" as well as all other important terms. Initiations take place on many levels and the power derived from an initiation into something depends very much on the person who practices.

*Mahāmudrā*

The following exercises are a preparation for performing Mahāmudrā:

*Preparatory  
exercises for  
Mahāmudrā*

1. Make a tube with your hands.  
Suck air up through your mouth.  
Feel the cold air move into your spine, all the way down.  
Then blow warm air through your hands.  
Feel the warmth in your mouth and again transfer it into your spine.
2. Stand on your shoulders.  
Tip your legs over your head, touching your toes to the floor above your head.  
Now by the weight of your body, let it come down slowly, one vertebra at a time, feeling each one touch the floor. See the image of your spine as you repeat the exercise in your mind.  
Think of your spine as you have seen it in anatomical books. See it with an empty central tube.  
Imagine it being made from glass and fill it with Light.  
  
Sit on the floor erect. Again tuck the left heel against the anus. Stretch the right leg in front. Hook the forefinger around the big toe of the

right foot. In this position there is a bending forward of the body. The left hand is placed on the left thigh. Focus on the space between the eyebrows. Put the tip of the tongue behind the upper teeth. Inhale and let the cool air flow into the spine. A slight sound of aw-aw is barely audible. Exhale the air through clenched teeth. There will be a slight sound of ee-ee. Feel warm air move up the spine.

Now exchange legs and stretch the left one in front. Repeat as given above. Do this 6 times on the left side and 6 times on the right side.

Next sit with both legs stretched out in front. Hook both forefingers around the big toes and repeat the exercise.

The final part of this exercise is to sit in Padmāsana or Siddhāsana and place both hands on the thighs, near the knees. The position is slightly bent, with the chin towards the chest. Do another 6 inhalations and exhalations as before.

*Meditation on  
the Rainbow*

This exercise is also known as the Meditation on the Rainbow. It is suggested to help to expand awareness, in conjunction with relaxation. The rainbow is composed of all colors, blending into each other. The meanings to the aspirant of all the colors of the Cakras should be clarified so that they can blend together. Now the acceptance of the symbolic meanings has come about. There is a saying among the Yogis that only the Great Ones can walk the rainbow.



# The Mind

What is this thing called mind, that can keep us prisoner and yet can experience such luminosity? It is like being two selves—one does not share in the experience of the other. Can we leave the part that holds us prisoner? Can we get outside of the old established orbit and stay with the Light? Perhaps we may spiral up into new realms, never before encountered.

*What is the mind?*

What is this thing called mind that demands with such authority to have everything explained, when there is really nothing to be explained, only to be experienced? Can mind understand the knowing of the heart?

Mind has no form. It is an emanation, like rays from the sun. Like the rays, mind travels in all directions. Mind is without color, without form, beyond all verbalization.

*Mind is formless*

To understand, one has to clarify to oneself "What is the mind? How do I use the word?" It is important that one has an understanding of the meaning of the words that one uses because a word is more than a sound, more than a group of letters—it expresses an idea or even a range of ideas.

As an illustration, are mind and consciousness the same? Does one use these words interchangeably, or does one attach special meanings to each word and give to each different characteristics? Is there only a one-level meaning, or are there many levels of meaning to both words?

*Mind and consciousness*

The brain, as a physical organ, is the seat of the mind. Can you clearly define what the mind is? Or how it functions? What degree of energy is employed when thinking or transmitting thought into speech?



*Conscious-  
ness: a bridge  
between two  
worlds*

What then is consciousness? Consciousness by itself is a phenomenon that has yet to be understood. Look at consciousness as a bridge between the world of daily living and the world of the Absolute. The Path of Kuṇḍalinī is one that uncovers the intuitive perception that has been buried by habitually making concrete that which is abstract.

Mind is an expression or characteristic of consciousness. It has access only to the limited consciousness of three dimensions, whereas consciousness itself is unlimited. Extraordinary effort has to be made to enable the mind to experience another dimension without being shattered in its imagined foundation. That is why anything beyond mind cannot be expressed. At that point the Yogi keeps silent—there is no other choice.

*Mind: the  
sixth sense*

In Eastern thought mind is considered one of the senses. It is seen as a sixth sense. Like the other senses, the various characteristics of the mind must also be discovered and explored.

*Mind the  
interpreter*

Life is perceived through the senses, and mind acts as the interpreter. Therefore, it is necessary to understand the mind's incredible abilities, powers, and creativity, and their effect on that interpretation. This is very little understood or thought about in daily life, nor is the *power of choice* recognized. This fact has a great deal of power and should play an important part in all human interaction.

*Need for  
security*

The need for security and simplicity prevents us from expanding our old limits in order to discover new territory, greater possibilities. Science is "breathless" at the possibility of mind over matter, yet experiences and evidence are rejected because they shatter well-established concepts. As in many other areas of life, there are only a few who are keen to explore the mind, prepared and willing to take risks and rise above their mental-emotional needs for security and reputation. The molding and development of the mind into new areas is a great challenge. If the exist-

ence of another dimension has never been intellectually considered, the shock can indeed be devastating when such an experience beyond the ordinary occurs. Each aspirant goes through some incredible "hells," having to let go of all mental, and thereby emotional, security in order to go beyond accepted limits of the mind. The Path often seems cruel and unbearable. As time passes, things do not become easier, but increasing insight shows that what has been thrown off has really been an unnecessary burden. In one of the lovely stories of Rādhā and Kṛṣṇa, the Lord says to Rādhā, "You must come to me naked and unafraid," meaning without any artificial "cover" or rigidly-held concepts. This stripping of all concepts, that truly "empties" one more and more as persistent work goes on, is really like becoming naked.

*Emptying the  
mind of  
concepts*

So it is sensible in the beginning to travel along well-proven roads. Those who have done so have outlined the path for others to follow. In the process of development ideas are prone to change. What you are thinking now may hold no value in three years, or even three months. You will have grown, you will have developed, your awareness will have increased, your level of understanding will have risen.

*Process of  
development*

There are no *final* conclusions that can be drawn on any level because, if we look at life, we can see that the classic saying of the Eastern teacher is as correct today as it was in bygone times: "Nothing is permanent." From being a sleepwalker, a hypnotized person, a conditioned person, you want to become a person who is aware. The purpose of the Path of Kuṇḍalinī is to wake you up from sleep and ignorance, and to free you from as many limitations as possible in one lifetime in order that you may reach the high goal of Cosmic Consciousness.

*No final  
conclusions*

The mind is as multi-layered as the mountains. It is impossible to even broadly assess all states that the mind can assume. The mind is a miniature universe—the universe is the expansion of the mind.

*States of mind*

*Mental  
aspects*

The mind operates on conscious, subconscious, and superconscious levels. There are the sensational, rational, and intuitive aspects; the Cosmic, infinite, and universal aspects of the mind. The laws of association, continuity, and relativity operate within the mind. All these mental characteristics have three "guṇas" or aspects—sattva (pure), rajas (action, passion), and tamas (inertia, ignorance).

*Sattvic mind*

In order to grasp the sattvic aspect of the mind it is necessary to clarify what one's concept of a pure mind is, how this relates to life, and in what areas. The sattvic mind is the uncolored mind, possessing the qualities of detachment, desirelessness, dispassion, and surrender to what is. The sattvic quality will allow one to consider the happiness or good fortune of others with joy.

*Rajasic mind*

The rajasic aspect of the mind is connected with the concepts of mental activity, its infinite possibilities to create and destroy, and its passion in regard to daily performance, more intense in some areas than in others. Again, discrimination and new decisions are necessary. The need for "constant entertainment" and self-expression has to be controlled in efforts to raise the mind from the rajasic to the sattvic state.

*Tamasic  
mind*

Then there is the tamasic mind, the mind of instinct and desire. The concept of darkness and inertia has to be pondered to be fully understood. The instinctual way of living is the way of ignorance, of darkness. It is man's destiny, being endowed with consciousness, to move from Darkness into Light.

*Selfishness*

Selfishness clouds understanding. The clear mind is inaccessible to the selfish individual. Elimination of selfishness is essential. Control and discrimination are necessary to achieve the sattvic mind.

*Concepts*

*Everything starts in the mind.* Conscious mental activity is the emergence of unconscious activity. All things are created by the mind and so all concepts are born of mind. While concepts provide the mind with the framework for understanding, the mind may



be limited by its own formulations. A mind free of concepts, free of scheming, without the compulsion to interpret, has reached the sattvic state, cleansed, pure, and white.

The statement that "everything is created by the mind" must also be carefully pondered. What could it mean? There is the single mind of an individual which creates its own world—as a businessman creates his business the way he perceives it should be. But there is also the collective creation of minds, since minds in contact with each other influence each other. In a collective sense the world as it is today is the creation of the combined efforts of many minds. Because the creativity of minds is a continuing force, there is constant change in the manifestation of the creative powers of the minds. We are much more masters of our destiny than we may recognize.

*Creation by  
mind*

Most people function far below the ability of their conscious mind. It needs stimulation and training if it is to grow, for if it does not receive the proper nourishment and care it will stagnate. A healthy, efficient mental attitude is as crucial to human evolution as is physical health.

*Development  
of mind*

When its values are clear, the mind has all the energy it needs. A healthy mind has the reasoning power to properly discriminate between pure self-gratification and manifestations that benefit others.

*Mental energy*

Characteristics are built into the mind over thousands of years. Qualities of the mind, such as intelligence, are developed according to the survival needs of an individual in each life. Intelligence expresses itself in many ways: in the abilities to form concepts, to interpret and generalize, to see relationships and associate thoughts, to differentiate and distinguish, to store and retrieve memory. We owe it to ourselves to make use of all the intellectual abilities of which the mind is capable.

*Intelligence*

"Know thyself and be free." The mind reacts to the faintest stimulus, which makes its control

*Mind control*

extremely difficult, but with practice it can be guided and directed. A roaming mind is very inefficient, losing energy and weakening the whole person, physically and mentally. On the other hand, a concentrated mind becomes aware of its own energy and increases it.

*Danger of  
drifting mind*

The drifting mind is dangerous. The mind can become agitated for no apparent reason. Watching the mind must be carried on at all times. The aspirant must never be in the state of "sleep," but be ever-watchful, learning from it, discovering the laws that govern it, gaining control, and directing it. This ever-increasing awareness gradually liberates the aspirant from mechanical thoughts and actions.

*Mental back-  
ground noises*

The aspirant becomes aware of the constant "mental background noises," the thousands of thoughts that go unnoticed by the "sleepwalker." Key sentences repeated mechanically have an incredible influence on the life of each person. Key word suggestions are the central controlling factor within oneself, and one has to take responsibility for all mental activity. When these key suggestions come from a source outside oneself—another person, television, news, etc.—there is a danger, even for very intelligent people, of losing individuality and taking on the concepts of others.

*Traps of the  
mind*

The mind is capable of great trickery. It can create traps and twist memory to suit itself. At first this may be difficult to recognize, but it can be detected with the practice of constant awareness, which is developed through daily reflection. Now one can confront the delay tactics of the mind filled with worldly desires. When desires are strong, their effect has to be recognized. The decision to put off the spiritual work until tomorrow is the best illustration of this. Carried to its extreme this means "to do the job in the next life"—only a tamasic mind will not recognize that this has happened already in a few hundred lifetimes, or maybe a few thousand, that have

been spent unfortunately.

That Liberation *can* be achieved in one lifetime is seen in the life of Tibet's great Yogi, Milarepa. The Yogis of today stress the possibility also. While the effort is enormous, the result is ecstasy, beyond description.

*Liberation in  
one lifetime*

## Powers of the Mind

Daily reflection will have clarified many areas in which the aspirant has been conditioned. Reconditioning is very much bound up with clarification in the major areas of life. The traditional Texts tell us how to become free of all conditioning by Concentration, Meditation, and Contemplation (Citriṇī, the three-in-one), which are achieved by will power, the ability to focus, to give attention, to accept and let go. These mental processes have to be understood and applied before they become meaningful and successful.

*Condition-  
ing and reconditioning*

In the beginning there is substitution of old ideas for new ones, as this is a process by which people learn. However, excessive substitution will be avoided when individuals become dissatisfied with the way in which they have been conditioned and can see the goal with clarity. Clouded thinking is then replaced by clear thinking (clairvoyance, clairaudience).

*Substitution*

Hypnosis is a state of mind which needs to be understood. Although views differ with each school of thought, here are a few points to be considered.

*Hypnosis*

1. Hypnosis can be effected without a trance state.
2. In hypnosis there is no flow of any type of magnetic "fluid" from the hypnotist to the subject.
3. Body contact or stroking is unnecessary to induce hypnosis.
4. Rapport between the hypnotist and the subject is not necessary. Hypnotism takes place all the time.
5. The subject induces it without any help from



another person and can also give post-hypnotic suggestion to himself or herself.

6. No type of magic paraphernalia is necessary to induce a state of hypnosis. Loaded words or questions have a hypnotic effect, as do silent thoughts simply by their repetition.
7. Surprisingly, unwillingness of the subject is no obstacle. A sudden authoritarian approach can have a strong hypnotic effect. Many people are sleepwalkers—they let themselves lapse into a state of semi-trance and this is very conducive to hypnosis. Repetition is most effective during waking hours and before or just after going into a deep sleep. Almost anyone can be hypnotized by another person in this way.
8. Hypnosis cannot lead to a state of samādhi or higher consciousness, as the goal of Yoga is Liberation, a state in which consciousness is free.
9. Hypnosis, although not a cure-all, can be a helpful tool under certain circumstances.

#### *Self-hypnosis*

Self-hypnosis cannot lead to Liberation, also, because of the absence of a high state of awareness. The old Texts assure us that pure consciousness (Puruṣa) is uncontaminated, which means it is unresponsive to stimuli. Talking to oneself aloud or mentally, which is habitual in many people, is also a form of autosuggestion or self-hypnosis. Even the very first series of exercises on the five senses will have proven the power of mental suggestion. For example, the smell of something particularly pleasant and appealing makes the mouth water. Or if you look at the back of your hand and imagine a mosquito biting you, if pursued long enough, this may bring about the typical reaction of itching and swelling as if a mosquito had really bitten.

#### *Physical suggestions*

The body, because of its own consciousness, puts ideas into the mind. When pain is experienced in some part of the body, a disorder is suggested. Yoga has made conscious use of this type of physical

suggestion through the mudrās. Mahāmudrā, the largest and most powerful, uses the subtle suggestion of postures of the body as well as certain positions of the fingers. The meaning of the mudrā, position, or gesture, is a subtle influence, a constant reminder of yogic aspirations.

Life as a whole, with all its many influences from birth, may be seen as a flow of constant suggestion. Even the toilet training of a child is much more vigorous than that of a Yogi or Yoginī holding the thumb and forefinger together with the attached thought, "I want to unite myself with the Most High."

Certain colors are conceived of as being warm or cold. This is not a fact, but an association with the way in which they were at some time presented. The suggested meaning stays with us, which is another form of hypnosis. The way one's name is pronounced can signal a wide range of emotions from fear to enthusiastic anticipation. The natural environment—a grey sky, a rainy day, or warm sunshine, glistening white snow, dry desert—all these stimulations create desires and have associations with their own hypnotic effect.

What we perceive through our eyes or ears is a particularly powerful suggestion, as is known in certain areas of business (radio, television, newspaper advertising). The power of suggestion can swing millions of people into a war or against a war, depending on the skill and manipulative ability of those who exercise them. This kind of exploitation by directing suggestions to others or to oneself can create karmic debts which have to be paid for at some time. All teachers have expressed the same warning that one has to account for everything that has been said or done. Anyone who gives a suggestion has to understand that some minds are weak, untrained, or simply ignorant and therefore can be easily influenced by a stronger and more powerful mind.

Trance, which is a sort of sleep by suggestion,

*Associations:  
suggested  
meanings*

*Power of  
suggestion*

Trance: sleep  
by suggestion

is a condition that is sought after by mediums so that other forces called entities can take over their physical apparatus to function for the required reasons. This, from a yogic point of view, is at variance with the pursuit of Liberation or Self-realization. The apparent lack of conscious awareness in the trance state is an inability to "recall." The conscious mind takes the liberty of selecting from presented material, but this selection is mostly done in a state of ignorance, without the wisdom and discrimination to make proper evaluations.

Predictions

Predictions have been made ever since the emergence of the human race. How are they possible and why are they sometimes true and at other times not? The aspirant must realize that space and time are understood only in an oversimplified way. To determine if and when a prediction is fulfilled is difficult, because of our distorted sense of time and space.

Predictions are possible when the mind can hold a state of deep reflection for a long period of time. They take place on many levels and in various degrees. On a general basis, predictions can have a powerful suggestive influence bordering on hypnosis and can, therefore, create the fulfillment of the prediction. The teachers of old have all issued warnings against the attainment of power as a goal when the student is in the early stages of development and may not understand the possible disastrous mental and emotional repercussions from lack of foresight or an irresponsible attitude.

Unfulfilled  
hopes

Many sincere seekers (swamis, rabbis, priests, etc.) can suddenly turn in the opposite direction from their spiritual goal because of great *disappointment in unfulfilled hopes of spiritual power*. They may vent their disappointment in cynical remarks, unjust attacks on others and sometimes even resort to dangerous manipulation of others to meet their own needs. The Yogi or Yoginī must be prepared for the tremendous fight the ego can put up through fear of being dethroned.



The major objective is to achieve control of all the lower forces. In one of the earlier exercises the aspirant focuses the gaze on an object for three minutes. This may have shown that one may become drawn into the object; in the same way, staying with one particular idea, one becomes drawn into it.

Therefore, the most important powers for any aspirant on the spiritual Path are awareness and discrimination. "What do I open myself to and why? Who and what is it that I invite (by my interest) into the house of my mind?" Discrimination is necessary to avoid the introduction of useless, even disastrous ideas. The aspirant again is referred to the practice of the Divine Light Invocation to keep the mind alert and aware. Where there is Light there cannot be darkness and the desires can be focused on the idea of growing into the Light. Or, the yogic method of relaxation may be practiced, which uses the voice as a guiding thread, but emphasizes over and over that with every inhalation awareness should be expanded.

*Whenever there is awareness, freedom of the mind is preserved.*

Consciousness, subconsciousness, and superconsciousness are the result of active Prāṇa, and any manipulation of its working, on an ignorant level, can bring serious injury to the central nervous system. It is necessary for the aspirant to understand the awesome power of the mind. Sincerity by itself is not enough protection. The aspirant is expected to apply what has been learned.

The mind, which is the vehicle of the Self's expression, is as precious as the body. Care is exercised in any surgery on the body, but psychological scars bear evidence that much more care is necessary when dealing with the mind. Remember, the Power is neutral and it is the application that counts. Make haste slowly. Be courageous, but do not gamble. Yoga is a process of dehypnotizing by the constant invoking of awareness. To escape any power of suggestion

*Awareness  
and  
discrimination*

*Conscious-  
ness: result of  
active Prāṇa*

means the achievement of an incredibly high level of awareness. Even great Yogis can be caught in a moment of unawareness and suffer the consequences. Ambition which lacks dedication, commitment, and devotion causes problems which can be avoided with prudence and awareness.

*Controlling  
forces of  
mediums*

One possible problem may be misdirected enthusiasm and emotional involvement with the controlling forces of mediums. The records prove that these forces have little or no concern for the medium. Some profound and wise information may come through, but let us not forget that many people, before they die, have learned their creed, slokas, verses, proverbs, etc., by heart and this could be the source of such information. It is a good decision for the aspirant to make at this point, to be involved only with forces of the Most High origin and not become a victim of forceful energies that seek expression for their own glorification. What use would there be if it were not the Most High?

*Psychic  
manifestations*

Another word of caution is necessary at this point. Many psychic manifestations can be the creation of one's own mind, which are picked up by the psychic. True manifestations of psychic energy demand great control of mind in a relaxed state on the part of the psychic. The aim of Yoga is to be always in control of the power of any kind of energy manifestation.

*Spiritual  
experience*

In contrast to the manifestation of psychic energy stands the spiritual experience which is of such magnitude that it indeed transforms the individual. No other event in human life has such an impact as a true spiritual experience. It creates a state of awareness in which many other happenings become insignificant, however much importance had been given to them at one time. These are the boons that the Devī has promised in her gesture vara(da).

## Chapter Ten



# *Powers* of the Cakras





*"The power that created the mind is beyond mind."*

# Powers of the Cakras:

## Their Attainment is Mankind's Potential

It is a mistake to assume that Kuṇḍalinī power can be developed easily by one single activity or through one single sense. Although one sense can override the others, a balancing must be maintained. The interplay of forces from the other senses can influence one sense quite unexpectedly at any given moment.

*Development  
of Kuṇḍalinī  
power*

All powers that are mentioned in the Texts can be acquired, although it may take many years. Exertion can bring about a premature manifestation and with it the danger of being consumed by these powers. The need for great care is understandable if we remember how many an inventor has been injured in the process of discovery of such powers as X-ray or the various forms of electricity.

*Premature  
manifestation  
of powers*

While each Cakra promises the faithful and persistent aspirant certain powers, they must first be understood from one's present position. It must also be recognized that it is not possible to develop just one Cakra, in the same way that one cannot develop just one of the five senses. The senses develop together; if one develops faster or at the cost of the others, the ensuing imbalance results in many problems.

*Each Cakra  
promises cer-  
tain powers*

Each of the Cakras is in control of one of the senses, therefore each Cakra is and should be affected by what is going on in the others. The powers already acquired must first be perfected and brought under control before others can be achieved. When the sattvic stage has been reached the powers come by themselves, without any danger to the aspirant. This is the safest and most desirable way.

*Sattvic stage*

## Powers of Mūlādhāra Cakra

*Power of  
speech*

In this Cakra we are dealing with the powerful effect of verbal and mental speech and its results on the individual mind. Self-suggestion and self-programming must be recognized to counteract their negative influence. The First Cakra is pure Energy. It is the beginning of speech, which means formulating what the childlike mind understands. And as the childlike mind goes through a process of maturing, not only through each Cakra, but through all the Cakras at various times, it is possible to see how the power of a later Cakra to create and destroy worlds is already present. We have seen that each world has its own realities, but it is now increasingly important to understand what is meant by this and how this Kuṇḍalinī power can suddenly leap into another dimension before control has been achieved.

Learning is a process that goes step by step. The most intelligent level of learning is achieved when the awareness is greatest, when pride is under control, and when one can learn from one's mistakes of the past, as well as from the mistakes of others, without having to repeat them. Sometimes we catch ourselves when we are just about to make a mistake, and often the awareness is there, but pride refuses to admit that the decision or action is faulty.

*Eternal  
Knowledge*

It is stated in the Texts that knowledge is eternal. This also needs to be understood at a deeper level. In all ages there have lived some men and women of high intelligence and great awareness. They were able to tap the source of knowledge in themselves and by way of intuition understand the meaning of that knowledge, which they put into the language of their own time for the benefit of others. Eternal Knowledge is therefore omnipotent.

One of the promised powers of the First Cakra is Eternal Knowledge. This all-powerful knowledge



on 4. 89

630

Agra

to P. 6

is of a different type from knowledge as we have discussed it so far, and an unusually high degree of intuitive perception is necessary to understand such messages.

People all over the world have the feeling that there is a Power greater than themselves. The Power is often personified but, when understood properly, the personification only applies to the vessel or the instrument through which that Power and all-powerful knowledge emanate.

Freedom from all sin is achieved at the first stage by recognizing mistakes, by controlling impulses, by learning through reflection, and by making the simultaneous connection between learning and knowledge. Sin is, from a yogic point of view, the intentional repetition of mistakes that are well-known. Mistakes that come through the process of learning are not sin. Human beings can only learn by trial and error. So again it falls to the aspirant to develop a high level of awareness and discrimination. It is within one's own power to become free of sin.

Freedom from  
sin

Greed and ambition can deprive the mind of its wonderful potential for creativity and quality in all aspects of living. Quality in living is the first step to bliss. *The joy of life is our inherited right.* To be always living in the spirit of gladness comes when we are free of selfishness and all that it entails. This process of self-mastery is indeed an experience of bliss that comes once the early stages of learning are past.



## Mantra for the Mūlādhāra Cakra

*In the Mūlādhāra of yours I worship Him who has nine natures, dancing the great Tāṇḍava, having nine sentiments, together with (His Śakti) Samaya, the quintessence of Lāśya. It is from these two, each having its own presiding form, looking in compassion on the disposition of the origination (of the world) that this world has come into existence, having you as father and mother.*

### *Commentary:*

Śiva dances His Cosmic Dance, the great Tāṇḍava.

Supreme Intelligence dances in the Self.

Śiva and Śakti dance together, delicately blended.

Rasa, the final awareness within.

The center of being is touched, free from competition.

The great Tāṇḍava, the dramatic, the Cosmic activity,  
sometimes violent like a storm;

Lāśya, the luring, the sweet, a whisper;

move together in bliss, delight and timelessness,  
in perfect rhythm.

Through this dance the world comes into being.

In the play of the Goddess (the Devī), whose substance is consciousness, the dual principle of Śiva/Śakti is presented as a male and female form, pointing to the polarity of the mind. Masculine and feminine principles are not narrowly limited, but are inseparable elements of Energy giving birth to whirling worlds, from the tiny atom to millions of galaxies. Nothing fixed, nothing rigid. Richness in mystical variations expressing life itself.

The powers of mind and matter, creation and destruction, birth and death, are an interplay of forces embodied in the dance of Tāṇḍava-Lāśya. In birth death is hidden, as heat is hidden in fire. Illusion and desire dance together. Life is a Cosmic wave; dazzling creation. All forms come into existence upon the manifestation of consciousness.

## Powers of Svādhiṣṭhāna Cakra

The ability of well-reasoned discourse or the writing of prose or verse leads to the power of imagination, which can be the basis of beautiful and inspiring words or of monster and horror stories. Writers of horror stories have often lost their minds because they did not know how to control their self-created world. The Power is neutral and it is the responsibility of the individual how to use the imagination.

*Ability of  
well-reasoned  
discourse,  
prose or verse*

It is not possible to fully separate the powers of one Cakra from another. Imagination and emotions work hand in hand, creating desires which can make almost everything possible. The image that emerges from the Second Cakra can move with lightning speed to the Third Cakra and can become a victim of the emotional impact made there. The creation of the imagination is reinforced by the emotions. Most of our fears are caused by uncultivated imagination based on ignorance. Only increased awareness can remove ignorance.

The scriptural Texts also say that we will be free from all enemies. It would be a mistake to personalize this and see them in the setting of the family or work situations. Rather, it is the enemies we have within ourselves, the evil inclinations driven by exerted self-will which kindle self-importance and self-absorption. Self-control is the first step, in conjunction with obedience to one's choice of the Path, towards the attainment of mastery. The control of those enemies or their destruction will make the aspirant a sovereign among Yogis and Yoginīs.

*Freedom from  
enemies*

When one is free of all enemies and the mind dwells more steadily on the beauty of the Most High, the most ideal, that which one would like to cultivate in oneself, speech expands and another level of poetry is reached. The highest level is perhaps the poet who is also a prophet.



## Mantra for the Svādhiṣṭhāna Cakra

*In the Svādhiṣṭhāna of yours I praise Him as Saṃvarta forever happy in the form of fire, O mother and also Samaya, the great one. When His glance filled with great anger consumes the worlds, it is Her glance dripping with compassion that makes this cool (soothing) service.*

### Commentary:

ŚIVA/ŚAKTI: I am the glow of the fire,  
the birth of all things,  
all-consuming death,  
memory and wisdom,  
grace and firmness,  
speed and patience,  
silence and sound.

The Divine appears terrible only when the dark cloud of ignorance screens the seeker from consciousness. Like a child, the ignorant seeker is attracted to the toys (gadgets, money, success) of the world. In its consuming anger Śiva's powerful glance indicates that ignorance is to be burned in the fire of wisdom. It is Divine Mother's compassion that allows the truant to return and try again. This is Her most soothing service. The old ego, in spite of its struggles, has to die. The dark cloud of self-will has to be dispersed so that the Light will no longer be obscured.



## Powers of Maṇipūra Cakra

The power to create and destroy worlds is signified in the power of speech. How ideas are expressed, the intonation of the voice, can create an environment of blissful happiness. Self-gratification and self-glorification, with their resultant impatience, greed or pride, can destroy a harmonious relationship.

*Power to  
create and  
destroy worlds*

The practice of awareness by itself creates a great Wealth of Knowledge. In contrast to the Eternal Knowledge of the First Cakra, knowledge is now beginning to have meaning on the personal level. This is the knowledge and discrimination as applied to daily events as they happen.

*Wealth of  
Knowledge*

Appreciation of the harmonious aspects of life is personified in Sarasvatī, the goddess of speech, of art, of music. When we can speak words of inspiration that touch an inner chord in another person, we can say that this is the worship of the Goddess Sarasvatī. We thereby have created our own world of harmony in which we function.

A saintly person, by simply entering the room, can bring a sense of quiet and stillness into a tumultuous group, opening the senses of those present to higher perceptions. It is on a much higher level, and through much more training, that the worlds created by the mind can be put into words and this inner knowing of the heart can be expressed.

We have many spiritual tools that would enable us to help ourselves to a higher state of consciousness, but we allow these tools to be forgotten, the practices to become routine, and thereby never attain to those other worlds of power. The spiritual practices are too precious to be degraded to a level of routine, and in the performing of the exercises it is important to guard against mechanicalness if we wish to increase consciousness and attain any degree of realization.

## Mantra for the Maṇipūra Cakra

*In the Maṇipūra of yours I serve Him as a dark cloud, which is the only refuge (of the world) raining down the rain on the three worlds scorched by the sun that is Hara. (This cloud which) carries the rainbow, Indra's bow, bedecked with ornaments of various glittering jewels, and which has flashes of lightnings due to His Śakti bursting forth from the enveloping darkness (of the cloud).*

### **Commentary:**

The rainbow has no substance, it is intangible and cannot be grasped. The rainbow is an optical illusion which becomes perceptible to the sense of sight under certain conditions.

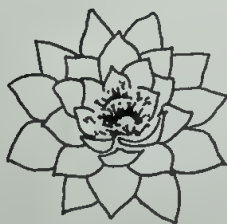
Sometimes the mind builds a rainbow to another dimension.

Sometimes flashes of lightning (insights) glitter with jewels of intuition.

Who can gaze at the sun when it is at the zenith?

The light, too great, too blinding, will scorch the mind.

The dark cloud offers much-needed rest, time to gather new strength.





## Powers of Anāhata Cakra

Anāhata implies the sound of Śabdabrahman. The Anāhata Cakra promises the hearing with the inner ear of the Cosmic AUM. This Cosmic sound is the sound that can be heard without the striking of two objects together. It can be heard only if listening has been practiced and if all the internal noises of the mind can be stopped.

*The Cosmic  
AUM*

The Text tells us that Divine Mother Śakti dispels all fears and grants boons of the three worlds: past, present, future. If the aspirant has learned from past mistakes, the increased understanding and discrimination will mean there will be fewer mistakes in the present. The characteristics of sincerity and devotion, humility and honesty, which the aspirant will now possess from the past and the present, will somewhat determine the future, a future of harmony and happiness.

The aspirant will be able to protect this newly created environment and destroy those negative aspects which may still remain from the past. The application of what has been learned in all situations increases awareness, which takes on the soft, gentle glow of a first glimpse of what illumination could be.

*Protect and  
destroy the  
three worlds*

By living wisely, doing noble deeds, keeping the senses under control, and having an extraordinary ability and power of concentration, the devotee or aspirant is able to render himself invisible and to enter another's body. Both of these promises need further elaboration. If I eliminate all my self-will and remove all self-protective screens, I can put myself in another's shoes and, while not identifying with the other person, I can have an understanding of that person.

*Entering an-  
other's body*

If we consider an actual physical body, then very highly developed practices are necessary in order to put on, like a garment, the discarded body of another person. Ernest Wood, in his book *Practical Yoga*,

Rendering  
oneself  
invisible

*Ancient and Modern*, gives a description of meeting an old Yogi who, because his body had grown old and he felt that the work of his life was not finished, entered the body of a youth who had just died.

To render oneself invisible it is first necessary to overcome the desire to be in the center of a group or to be the focus of the attention of another person. The desire for closeness to another and all the emotional needs that go with it have to be overcome first. Another person's preoccupation can create our invisibility.

Today there are people who use the energy field around a human body to detect disturbances and to analyze and pinpoint defective organs that are not visible to the eye. Those energy fields can be charged. The power of concentration of one's own mind allows for the renunciation of the desire to be seen or noticed. The energy field around the body can keep the mind of a passer-by suspended and make one invisible at that moment. No image of oneself is leaving the orbit of one's own energy field.

The practice of the Divine Light Invocation is one of those exercises that will aid in reaching a different type of visibility. It can increase one's energy field by one's own efforts. If one's brain-matter is lit up properly, one can be invisible and one can also project an image of oneself to some distance. That happens naturally with practice of the Divine Light Invocation and takes place on its own account, without any frightening experiences.

Persistent study and the practice of awareness and discrimination will aid in acquiring these powers, but the aspirant should be warned that the results may come after many years, even lifetimes.

## Mantra for the Anāhata Cakra

*I venerate (revere, render devotional service) this pair of swans which swim in the mind of the great, feeding on the unique honey of the Lotus (heart) that is the opening of understanding. From their chatter comes the development of the eighteen kinds of knowledge, and by using them one acquires all qualities out of defects, just like taking the milk from water.*

### **Commentary:**

Devotion is the antidote to all self-glorification. The devotional approach includes reverence, as well as the knowing and recognizing of the greater Power.

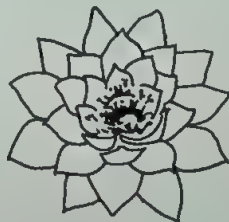
Being devoted to Śiva/Śakti, symbolized as a pair of swans in the lake of the mind, the mind becomes saturated with the milk of Divine Wisdom.

Through devotion the devotee opens up like the Lotus in the light of the sun.

Thereby one becomes receptive to Divine Knowledge, manifest in many ways.

By application of this Knowledge to living one is like a bee collecting honey from the flower.

One emulates the swan learning to take the Divine milk from the water of illusion.





## Powers of Viśuddha Cakra

*Freedom from  
worldly  
desires*

This Cakra promises that one becomes free of worldly desires. At this stage of one's life they have served their purpose. The desires have created ambition, perfection, skills, efficiency and helped one to see and develop strengths. The energy that is no longer locked up in the pursuit of worldly desires raises the aspirant now to a higher plane, to the Gateway of Liberation. But at the Gateway of Liberation self-will must be surrendered to the Higher Self, no longer to the ego-mind.

*The Gateway  
of Liberation*

*Complete  
Knowledge is  
obtained*

All that has been learned to this point contributes to the aspirant's Wealth of Yoga. In the First Cakra Eternal Knowledge has been promised and in the Third, Wealth of Knowledge may be acquired. Now in the Fifth Cakra, the subjective and the objective are united in the Complete Knowledge and the aspirant comes closer to the meaning of Yoga, the union.

*Knowledge  
of the past,  
present, and  
future*

At a later stage of development the Complete Knowledge is all powers that can be known, or even those that are unknown except to highly developed Yogis. Complete Knowledge can only be achieved by increased concentration. *The key to all powers is control of the mind.* Understanding this on a deeper than intellectual level brings peace of mind which enables one to see the three worlds, the past, the present, and the future, as already discussed in the Fourth Cakra. One can with greater clarity look back, see the present, and anticipate the future; see what one must avoid doing, what one has to do, and perhaps what one should expand to do.

*Destruction of  
dangers*

The first step in destroying danger is taken by careful thinking, the removal of all false ambition, and no longer rushing emotionally into decisions. Simply by increased awareness, greater discrimination, and more care in all actions and reactions, no longer

mechanically responding to events, we understand how danger can be destroyed. This awareness creates an attitude of heart and mind that will make one merciful to all. We begin to understand that we are all a product of our environment and the victim of our own ignorance. When ignorance is removed much danger is removed. But to become more knowing takes courage as well as a willingness to accept greater responsibility.



# Mantra for the Viśuddha Cakra

*In your Viśuddhi I serve Śiva, the progenitor of the sky, transparent like a pure crystal, and also the Devī who is like Śiva and attached to Him. It is through their beauty and graceful movements, shimmering like the rays of the moon, the world shines, its internal darkness having been dispelled, like the Cakora. (The world is feminine.)*

## Commentary:

Selfless service makes one Divine.

To be a servant demands that one renounce self-will and thus become pure and transparent like the blue sky so the Divine may shine through.

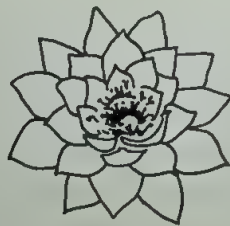
As the color that gives form to the crystal cannot be separated from it, so Śiva and the Devī are joined together.

The graceful movements of their Cosmic Dance are only perceptible in those mystical moments when the ethereal inspirations are perceived like the shimmering rays of the moon, in that act of complete surrender.

The Cakora bird subsists on the moonbeams.

Just as it rejoices by drinking the rays of the moon, so also the Sādhaka drinks the Brahmic bliss by meditating on Śiva and Devī.

The Sādhaka's ignorance is thus dispelled.





## Powers of Ājñā Cakra

At this point the aspirant understands how one has created one's own life, all of one's pains, problems, and difficulties, as a process of learning. That which has been gained needs to be preserved, and what is no longer necessary must be destroyed. In order to fulfill the Divine Union, even this perfect state in which one finds oneself, with the wisdom, the excellent powers, the pure intellect—even this state has to go as well, before the last and final plunge can be taken. Some Yogis have told me that when this final decision is taken, the body drops off between nine and twenty-one days. The Yogi usually chooses the time of death and the method.

Proper identity is achieved by indeed knowing that one is created by Divine Light, or by the Cosmic Intelligence, the Absolute, or God, whatever word is most desirable.

Nothing specific can be said of the "excellent unknown powers," but the indication I can give is that there is the knowing of more than three dimensions or even four, a conception that can only be described in nebulous terms, because language has not expanded far enough for a more precise description.

Pure intellect means intellect free of selfish desires. The Śakti aspect of intellect creates. All the world is Mother Śakti's creation.

We have been talking throughout these pages about the necessity for balance. Here is, perhaps, the most crucial point where balance is needed. If the foundation has been carefully laid and all the practice done, the aspirant will have control over the powers and not be consumed by them. There will be the Divine Union of the individual Self, or the individual intelligence, with the Supreme Cosmic Intelligence, by becoming half and half, male and female, intellect and intuition.

*Creator,  
preserver,  
destroyer of  
the three  
worlds*

*Leave the body  
at will*

*Identification  
with the  
Supreme*

*Excellent un-  
known powers  
are acquired*

*Pure intellect*

*Divine Union  
established*

## Mantra for the Ājñā Cakra

*I venerate Him who is residing in the Ājñā Cakra of yours. I worship (revere) the highest Śambhu in your Ājñā Cakra, flanked by the highest intelligence (She), Him who has the splendor of millions of suns and moons. He who worships by propitiating with devotion will reside in the world of the Light of all lights, which is in the world, which no earthly glance can reach and is far removed from the glance of ordinary mortals. There neither sun nor moon shines, neither fire nor the other heavenly bodies.*

### Commentary:

When mind looks at the Supreme Intelligence it stands in awe of its splendor and its power.

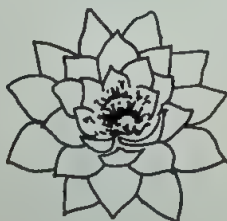
The comparison of millions of suns and moons is insufficient to describe their brilliance.

Even the galaxies of stars and suns and moons can only reflect the Light that comes from the source of all light.

The Power that has created the eye can see.

The Power that created the mind is beyond mind.

Śiva/Śakti is neither male nor female (nor neuter) but existence, consciousness, bliss—Sat-cit-ānanda



## Powers of the Cakras

Contact with a Guru is necessary to perform and persevere in all the exercises and practices that will bring about the true realization of the powers mentioned in the Text. No exercise must be excluded. It is necessary to go through the whole process.

*Need for a  
Guru*

The practice of Yoga means to transform oneself from a sleepwalker into a person who is wide awake and responsive to the needs of others. Without compassion, all the powers and the techniques mean nothing. One could become more self-centered, almost narcissistic, which is not the aim of Yoga. We cannot realize Oneness if we isolate ourselves from others.

*Transforma-  
tion*

The desire to grow is like a beautiful flower. It must root in the world and it must grow, piercing through the surface of the earth and unfolding into the Light. We do not think that roots are bad—without them the flower could never be. Discrimination and a greater understanding grow from the limited concepts we have held.

*Process of  
growth*

The discovery of so many negative aspects in oneself and the limitations should not be seen as something evil. They are part of the perfection of Life, one half of the unit. Without knowing the darkness of night, the light of day is not enjoyed. Even illness is perfect when the individual needs to develop a sense of gratitude for health. By being cut off from the "busy-ness" of the pursuit of life, the individual is forced to think, to realize the balance of life.

Although healing is possible even over long distance, one must ask if the reason one wishes to heal is for one's own ambition. The plight of another person is your opportunity to develop compassion to an almost Divine degree. Compassion can be seen in three stages: at first it is expressed only to friends and loved ones; then you are moved by the suffering

*Healing*

*Compassion*



of an unknown but worthy individual whose plight is brought to your attention; finally, when your concern can extend to include the violent, the drunken, the downtrodden, your compassion approaches the Divine.

*Gratitude*

You will reach a point when you will even be grateful for those who criticize you and make you feel miserable. You must not waver, even when it seems that the rug is pulled from under your feet. *Liberation is always worth the price, whatever it may be.*

*Temptations*

Temptations continue to come even in the life of the greatest Yogi, or most saintly person. The temptations just become more subtle. Therefore, put your Guru—a priest, a minister, or whoever you choose—into the Light too.

The criticism by followers can undermine the Guru. Too much adoration will do the same, but only to a Guru who still has much ego left, who does not have sufficient discrimination, perhaps not even the intellectual understanding of what it means to be a Guru. *The Guru can make a mistake but, like a good parent, without intent.*

Do not undermine other seekers who, in your opinion, are following the wrong path. Put them into the Light. Let the Light take care of it. How can we know what is in the Divine Plan?

Awareness and discrimination are the greatest powers that the Cakras can bring, but they must be crowned with compassion.

“The Divine in me salutes and recognizes the Divine in you”—this is the attitude of the Higher Self, of which the ego has no part.

*(Advanced exercises for the attainment of the powers of the Cakras can only be given after the foundation has been laid and through personal instruction.)*

## Chapter Eleven



# *Brainstorming:* Mind Consciousness Energy



*"The drop has returned to the ocean."*



# Brainstorming: Mind, Consciousness, Energy

**E**NORMOUS POWER is required to lift heavy material beyond the gravitational field of the earth. Consider also that it takes a substantial increase of power for the ordinary mind to lift itself through the accepted barriers. The exploration of mind and consciousness needs to be carried out by all who wish to go beyond those barriers. This must include all segments of human society, as then only will a wide range of mental powers surface. It would be wise to discard all racial prejudices and see people in terms of "time-space-circumstances." The cultural conditions of each social group determines the life of its people, whose minds develop differently and achieve varying potentials. This can be recognized from the accounts of Kuṇḍalinī and its powers written by people of different cultural backgrounds.

The practice of brainstorming applied to investigating mind and consciousness would help to overcome the power of *preconceived* ideas that sets firm limitations and thereby undercuts true research. Many questions have to be asked of oneself in this exploration. "Can I bring myself to keep all judgment suspended? Am I willing to travel uncharted seas of the mind? How will I deal with my anxieties? If, for the moment, I anticipate that some 'phenomena' have a basis of reality, how much will it alter my mental perception, interfere with my mental and emotional security? How will I have to change my familiar and comfortable picture of the world?"

Consider first being able to move objects by thought only. Or, what would it do to your ideas of your world if you could watch the seed of a violet, resting in the palm of your hand, grow and flower in ten minutes? Did the walls of Jericho fall because somebody knew which key to blow on the trumpets? Were the mas-

sive granite blocks of the pyramids moved by sound? Have you spent "your time off the earth" in space, and by what decision did you return, for what reasons?

We must not hesitate to do this kind of brainstorming if we wish to expand our understanding of mind and consciousness. These are only a few of the many questions that must be asked. Once again the need for mental and emotional discipline becomes evident. Fears and anxieties which are the result of lack of discipline must be dealt with. However, those which come from other unknown sources should be seen as a protection in disguise as they prevent premature exploration. The aspirant should not force the mind for any reason, because an overload may cause a breakdown.

Aspirants who are well-grounded in themselves, enriched by the innumerable experiences that have resulted from their practice, have had their minds stretched sufficiently to handle nonordinary experiences. Similarly, newly invented machines are first big and cumbersome, but they finally become miniaturized as technical and psychological obstacles are overcome. What at first may seem difficult becomes more acceptable as limitations diminish.

Mind is different from consciousness. In small children clairvoyance or clairsaudience is often observable, although such a child is not conscious of it nor aware that there are children who do not share the same capacity. Consciousness is a manifestation of Prāṇa (Energy). How Prāṇic Energy produces consciousness is not known. There are no hints in the ancient Texts because the most profound knowledge was only handed down in a very direct, personal manner from Guru to disciple. If Gurus are still alive who have that knowledge, it will be difficult to find them, more difficult to obtain that knowledge. The reason is obvious—abuse of power. Even Ramakrishna told Vivekananda, after giving him an out-of-the-body experience, that he had been shown but now would have to do it by himself.

The study of Kuṇḍalinī indicates that higher states of consciousness apply to dimensions beyond the first three. It is difficult for the mind to imagine what a 4th, 5th, 6th, 7th, or maybe even an 8th dimension, or the state of consciousness known as samādhī, could mean. There is no text translated into English that really clarifies what samādhī is, or that sufficiently explains the difference of the six stages called samādhī. Maybe the true meaning of samādhī has

not been handed down because of loss of that knowledge. It stands to reason that the 6th stage of samādhī is really nothing more than the first glimpse of the fourth dimension, simply because man, with the possible exception of mathematicians and physicists, cannot conceive of other dimensions.

The statement that everything is created in the mind can be seen in psychological terms and from a viewpoint of imagination. Although there is no text available that would state that there is anything in existence that is not created by human intelligence, it is important to consider to what degree that all-embracing phrase "everything is the mind" can really be useful. Yet, Patañjali, in Sūtras III-27, 28, and 29, respectively, said that we can have knowledge from the sun, the moon, and the polestar. The implication is that those heavenly bodies have not been created by the ordinary human mind.

Consciousness that operates on a 5th or 8th dimension cannot be anticipated on the 3rd. Even if it could be vaguely understood, language has limitations and anything beyond the 3rd dimension can only be expressed with great difficulty. It is a well-known fact that all realized persons have kept silent about these dimensions because there are no words with which to communicate. What has been created outside human consciousness by other intelligent forces is a question that at the moment no one can answer. It is my understanding that all definitions of samādhī exclude this point.

We have said previously that the Power that created the eye can see and the Power that created the ear can hear. If this Power is not in need of a physical eye to be able to see, or a physical ear to hear, it is reasonable to assume that this Power or Energy would not need a vehicle as human beings do at the present stage of evolution.

We must take our hypothesis a step further. If consciousness is Energy and Energy is indestructible, what happens to that vortex of Energy-consciousness when its vehicle of expression, the body, is gone? Will we have bodiless consciousness? What can those forces do? Will they affect anyone? If so, in what way? What happens to those forces and where do they "reside"? What power can such bodiless consciousness exercise? Is that power inexhaustible? Does it generate itself by itself, or through something else? If we assume that there are bodiless mind-consciousnesses (forces) and if the energy



of these forces is limited, where and how might such regeneration take place? Could these bodiless consciousnesses be termed "extra-terrestrial" consciousness, being outside the orbit of the earth? Can they influence those forces that are still in a body, or use a body as a vehicle, and therefore also use emotional energy? Can the human mind and its emotional energy become the fuel or recharger of the bodiless consciousness?

These thoughts are not as outrageous as they will first appear. Physically, humans feed on the vegetable and animal kingdoms. Emotionally and mentally, people feed on each other. There is no reason to assume that there is not something that would feed on us.

Mankind may have wondered thousands of years ago if there was life on other planets and what form that life would have. How else would Patañjali have made the statements referred to above? Astronomers today speculate about the same question. Perhaps we can consider that such a bodiless consciousness finds a place of rest or further learning, or just waits to take on a body once again to keep the process of birth and death going. Such bodiless consciousness is difficult to imagine and perhaps the ideas of angels, spirits, and great masters have been needed to indicate the existence of intelligence that is able to communicate, but by different means from what is possible in a three-dimensional world.

The power of belief of millions of people can itself become a vortex of energy. Consider a great being, that for simple communication we will call "Umā." Let us assume that at one time Umā was intended to be a great savior or liberator for mankind. If 500 million people believed in the power of Umā, as 500 million Catholics believe in Jesus, one must accept that we are dealing with an enormous power of those millions of minds.

All illustrations are insufficient to explain something that is beyond sense perception, but this power will be more easily understood by thinking of the incredibly active force that is generated in all mass hypnosis where the individuality of consciousness is lost and becomes part of the mass. If this can happen on the physical level there is no reason to think that it cannot happen on other levels also.

The aspirant should now read excerpts 11 and 12 in the Appendix about the young gods from mid-heaven and the descent of the soul. How are we to understand the workings of the power of the

mind when we are told that Brahmā created His first four "mind-born" sons? Is this connected with the young gods from mid-heaven? Is it possible that the mind at one point could reproduce itself and, after losing that power, had to resort to the method of reproduction now known? By the power of imagination, a woman who intensely desires to have a child can produce every symptom of pregnancy except the child. Can this be taken a step further? What is behind the saying, "Ye are gods"? It might indeed be that the accumulation of intelligences makes a demand of enlarging consciousness and that this evolution of mankind is still going on. Perhaps this process was somewhat immature when curiosity brought these young gods down to earth. Their bodies are described as being ethereal, which means of such fine stuff that it is invisible to sight. Obviously these young gods who stayed around on the earth for too long lost some of that quality. We are told that their bodies hardened. We must conclude, therefore, that living on earth would depend on the use of a body, while a center of consciousness that is unencumbered by the heaviness of the body might be able to spend some time on other stars or planets for development, or for the purpose of increasing energy from those who do not care to have it.

Energy is available for anyone who wants to make use of it. Pursuing higher consciousness, or increasing one's level of consciousness, is like going after the yellow or black gold that is buried in the bowels of the earth. In either case, only those who are willing to put in the effort will achieve results. In the same way that the explorer for gold makes use of the intelligence of others, so one can also attract the intelligence of others for nonordinary ends.

What we have been talking about is Energy. God is a personified idea of Energy—Cosmic Energy, Cosmic Intelligence, the Absolute. Unless you have gone through the kind of mental acrobatics that I have just presented, the words "Cosmic Intelligence" have little meaning. To overcome the personified idea of God is only possible through gradual development of individual consciousness.

The belief held for centuries that only by suffering and poverty can a person become a saint is not valid and has been rejected by the intellectual and the scientist. But the arrogance and pride in the intellect must also be rejected because they block the road to higher consciousness. The saint is, in fact, a different type of genius and it is in the acceleration in the growth of intelligence and aware-

ness, by cooperation with the process of evolution, that the future of the human being lies. The evolution of human intelligence is therefore not only inevitable, but is the thrust of each being endowed with consciousness.

The evolution of intelligence has been the destiny of all human beings ever since their appearance on the earth. Each life experience is part of that evolution—the more intense, the more dramatic, the greater the lesson. One not learned will be repeated. Some lessons are learned by being taught by another person, or by reading and studying. Some knowledge is transmitted from mind to mind (Guru to disciple), but there is also evidence that transmissions are possible through a massive group of minds which may or may not be embodied. Transmission of knowledge also takes place by radiating from a source of knowledge as yet unknown.

The mind's most intriguing quality is intelligence, at present mainly used for scientific discoveries and inventions. There are still undiscovered possibilities of the functioning of the brain, which was created for the evolution of consciousness and as a receptacle for radiation of knowledge from other dimensions.

MAYBE NOW YOU WILL LOOK FOR YOUR GURU!





*"The desire to grow is like a beautiful flower. It must root in the world and it must grow, piercing through the surface of the earth and unfolding into the Light."*



# Appendix





# Notes

---

## 1. Different Paths for the Aspirant

The purpose of this book is to give tools for the development of greater potential to those who wish to give the time and effort to discover the latent power that is inherent within them and who are willing to cooperate with the law of evolution as it pertains to each aspirant. In writing I have tried to steer a middle course for the aspirant who is a householder, a career person: those individuals who want to pursue higher values in life without abandoning the pursuit of worldly interests. This path is different from that of the renunciate who gives up many of the worldly activities and interests in order to devote more time and energy to the Goal of Liberation.

The word "renunciate" has a wide range of meaning in different religions and perhaps can be understood in part through the example of marriage where each partner has to renounce some desires, will, freedom of choice, in consideration for the other. When lived in the strictest sense, renunciates depend totally on every life situation for the fulfillment of their human needs, believing that the Power that created the human being in the first place is capable of looking after them. This statement has little meaning unless it has been experienced. The experience of renunciation clarifies many of one's own personality aspects that would be difficult, if not impossible, to know in any other way. The degree of renunciation, the desire and stamina to experience it, is a decision that must rest with the individual.

Another aspect in the life of the yogic aspirant that is frequently misunderstood is brahmacharya or celibacy. The vow of celibacy is not given because of a religious belief or vocation, but is an accepted choice enabling the aspirant to more quickly ascend the spiral of evolution through conscious cooperation. Another popular misconception concerns the life of the ascetic. It does not mean starvation or self-torture. The true ascetic is a person who is living a self-controlled and ordered life with the purpose of directing maximum energies into the search for Liberation.

## 2. The Power of Speech

Throughout the book, there has been a major emphasis upon the power of speech and its development. Many scriptural Texts contain commands or utterances that show a common recognition of the power of the Word. For example, Jesus in Matthew XII: 36,37, says: "But I say unto you, that every idle word that men shall speak, they shall give account thereof in the day of judgment. For by thy words thou shalt be justified, and by thy words thou shalt be condemned." This quotation refers to cause and effect as it is expressed in the idea of karma. It points to scrutiny of all actions including speech and implies a depth of responsibility that we rarely consider. Similarly, the concept of Ahimsa or non-injury means that

all actions, speech, and deeds have to be performed without injury to anyone else or to oneself. That is a simple expression of a complex formula and therefore needs to be pursued in depth.

In the ancient Texts the power of speech is spoken of as the Devī or Goddess of Speech. Some Texts speak of the Devī in the Mūlādhāra Cakra and later on change to the Lord of Speech. In this book the term "Devī" of Speech has been used consistently because speech is an expression of creation which has a female or mother aspect. It also means power of speech, persuasion, hypnosis or luring by song.

When the meaning of the power of speech is comprehended, then the importance of "key sentences" in the mind can be understood and used to effect changes. The key sentence is a short command phrase that is used, most of the time without awareness, in a repetitive way: "I can't do this" or "I have never done such a thing"—thereby undermining willingness to try (and avoiding success). Key sentences can be counteracted in a positive manner. There is room for a great deal of experimentation by the individual aspirant. Key sentences have to be short to be effective. Their formulation should be clear and positive, and can be compared to suggestion.

### 3. Mantra

The practice of Mantra Yoga will increase the individual's sensitivity to the vibrations. The mind uses both sound and vibration as a focal point for concentration in order to achieve a state that leads to meditation and beyond. As sound can stir water in a glass, so the vibrations of Mantra stir the subconscious.

Emotions can only be controlled . . . they are not meant to be overcome. They serve a definite purpose in our lives, but to control one's emotions is far easier said than done. The chanting of Mantras is a means of expressing any kind of emotion, from the most ugly to the most exalted. In chanting out these feelings, we learn to accept both parts of ourselves; we do not hide behind the illusion that we are only good, or pure, or ugly. We are attempting to transcend the pairs of opposites, which we must do if we are to be free.

Repetition of a Mantra gradually awakens the higher faculties in us. This repetition may be carried on by verbal, whispered, or mental recitation. The mental repetition can be alternated with voiced repetition to help to keep the mind from wandering.

Extended Mantra chanting brings the aspirant in touch with the Self and brings release from emotional imbalance. We can bring ourselves into harmony within our own being. But, although all this is true, none of the above-mentioned benefits will come unless the efforts are completely serious. The chanting of Mantra for hours a day or even one or two hours a day is not easily done by the Westerner who has been entertained by external input since infancy. It can seem boring, dull, pointless. But with perseverance it can prove to be of profound benefit for those who take the time to do it.



#### 4. A Further Note on Sex and Celibacy

In order to further understand why some aspirants renounce sex, it is necessary to expand one's understanding of "feeding." All forms of life must feed upon other life in some way. The human body feeds on the various kingdoms of nature: vegetable, mineral, and animal. But the emotions also feed on the needs, minds, and imaginations of other persons as well as on one's own. Think about the effects of all those activities and particularly as they relate to sex. When this has been done, celibacy can be more easily understood as a free choice of action occurring at a certain stage of development of the human being. A generally accepted scheme of evolution is seen by the Yogi as: mineral-man, vegetable-man, animal-man, man-man or being truly human, and god-man or the perfectly liberated. The term "man" must here be understood as "human being."

Celibacy can invoke hallucination and some of the stories of the gods and goddesses are certainly the result of that. A study of mythology can be a source for research in this area. It must, however, be considered that the human mind cannot think of anything that is non-existent. Celibacy, examined from the view of mind over matter, can lead to some useful speculations. These may at some time take a different turn, toward space travel or the planned occupation of planets. It is clear not only to the scientist, but also to the average intelligent thinker, that there cannot be life on other planets as it is known here on earth. But fertility of the mind will, when needed and when the time comes, give birth to manifestations presently not considered.

#### 5. Mind and Consciousness

While assumptions can be useful, in the case of learning about the mind and consciousness they can be disastrous. It is safer to assume that consciousness is energy and that the process of its manifestation is not known yet. Mind can then be seen as a screen on which the pictures emerge. Consciousness is omnipresent. Mind and matter are interrelated by the one unifying force of consciousness making all knowledge possible.

The course of evolution, the purpose of life, is the attainment of higher consciousness. Liberation from ignorance leads to higher consciousness which is knowledge by personal experience. The future of mankind depends on that knowledge and its application.

#### 6. Worship

For many people in the West, worship is not understood and they may think that it does not play a part in their lives. However, it might be helpful to remember that the Rock group, the Beatles, was such a hit that Life magazine showed a picture of people scraping up the earth and saying: "The Beatles walked here," as if these young musicians were Jesus Christ Himself. In such circumstances worship springs from a deep desire that needs to be fulfilled and will find its outlet in these ways if traditional worship has not been developed or has been undermined.

Anyone who can claim exclusiveness in knowledge or position of power has the adoration of those who are impressed. This also applies to a person of a different race, and many of the pseudo-Gurus of the present time are successful simply because of their outer attire which agrees with the imagination of the ignorant. Worship when positive is a very helpful factor, contributing to personal development. However, discrimination must be applied.

In one's personal worship a spiritual image may be created and visualized by the power of imagination. This imagery serves a certain purpose only. It is an appearance. The practice of the Divine Light Invocation will make it transitory. Intuitive perception will take proper care of the transition. The image is therefore a provisional concept of three levels of power: 1. self-mastery, 2. concentration-contemplation, and 3. pure consciousness. Meditation on Light is one of the most subtle ways to start. It sets some seekers free from religious aspects which may be undesirable. At the same time, substitution of various gods and goddesses is avoided, once the practice of concentration has been mastered.

Worship is a process of self-awareness and the seat of what is reflected is somewhere else. It cannot be touched or taken away. Like the fragrance of a flower travelling on the air waves it cannot be picked up and placed elsewhere. It is intangible and yet it has a reality of its own. It has a presence.

## 7. Secret Powers of the Mind

The aspirant who looks for clear-cut answers must realize that the achievement of certain mental powers are kept secret. Government's power is dependent on the support of the masses who have little understanding. History has shown that when there is fear of someone rebelling against the system in which the majority feels secure, harassment or even imprisonment is the result. Jesus was such a rebel of His time and paid dearly for it. However, the observations of great Yogis can be pursued by deep thought.

One such tightly-kept secret is mystical Haṭha Yoga as symbolized in the upside-down tree. It is up to the individual to practice the āsanās to the point where that secret can be unlocked. However, it is my understanding that without some study of scriptural Texts and mythology, such secrets will yield little gain. Another exercise—filling the spine with Light—is much more than a concentration exercise. It involves a change of the atomic structure of the brain, eliminates unnecessary fear, and thereby prepares the student for experiences that are beyond the ordinary. Therefore, it is not possible to give instructions for advanced levels.

Another secret power is withdrawing the life force. I have met the son of a Yogi who, although he was at first angry and disappointed that his father had deserted the family for the yogic Path, was himself in the process of doing the same thing when I knew him. His father had allowed him to observe the procedure when he withdrew the life force, consciously and at will, after explaining in detail what he was going to do and how long it would take. Although this young man had decided to also follow the yogic Path, he was making preparations to ensure that his family would not suffer from his actions.

Prāṇa is translated as life force. While this is not the best translation it has to suffice for now. The Egyptians used the symbol of the ankh residing in the spine for the life force. An interesting wall hanging depicts the spine of Osiris from which the ankh emerges with two out-stretched arms and the sun above. The sun is symbolic for that particular life force and a dot indicates that the actual sun is not meant. The meaning of Prāṇa has to be deeply contemplated to discover various levels as all the powers have their origin in Prāṇa. The explanation of Prāṇa as the life force is only the first steppingstone to discovery by the aspirant.

On page 45 of his book, *Light on Yoga*, B. K. S. Iyengar cautions the aspirant in the practice of Prāṇāyāma by quoting from Haṭha Yoga Pradīpikā, Chapter 2, verse 16 as follows: "As lions, elephants and tigers are tamed very slowly and cautiously, so should Prāṇa be brought under control very slowly in gradation measured according to one's capacity and physical limitations. Otherwise it will kill the practitioner." Those who understand that Yoga is more than a passing fad will know that the warning given in this book is well-founded.

## 8. Misunderstandings about Kuṇḍalinī and Sex

Because tradition emphasized the direct teaching from Guru to disciple, Kuṇḍalinī has remained mysterious and thereby created much speculation and confusion. It is unfortunate that today when there is a great deal of interest and discussion about Kuṇḍalinī Energy it is mainly linked to only one aspect—sex. Particularly in the West, it has now become a word and a concept that serves as an excuse for many things. Attributing events to Kuṇḍalinī Energy and its overwhelming power, men and women throw aside sexual inhibitions and indulge in all sorts of illicit sexual activity. This lack of real understanding of the nature and purpose of Kuṇḍalinī is leading not only to confusion and disaster in human relationships, but also to mental imbalance. This happens because the Path of Kuṇḍalinī has not been sufficiently understood and the groundwork has not been laid. This emphasis which invites greater freedom and enjoyment of sexual pleasure has been taken out of context from an ancient Eastern culture that was vastly different from the one now existing in the West.

There are two principal schools of thought in Kuṇḍalinī Yoga. Both acknowledge the pure Energy in the Mūlādhāra Cakra. One school applies this Energy in a concrete way by an emphasis on sex. The other does not concretize the direction of the Energy but seeks to transcend all attachment, including sex, through the development of the mental powers. If this difference in the application of the Energy is not understood, problems will arise. Even in the case of concrete application, which means the inclusion of the sexual experience, it has to be recognized that all the statements of the ancient Texts have been made from a man's point of view. Sex does not burden the male with responsibility for the possible offspring because that has traditionally been viewed as the female's responsibility. Neither in the ancient Texts nor in the stories is there any clarification of what happens to the female and her offspring when the male aspirant is geared to the attainment of the goal he has set for himself—using sex for his liberation and to attain higher consciousness. In this case, the woman is taken as an object of practice. Because



of the biological result that makes her a mother, she and her child become an obstacle to the attainment of his goal. Is that not, in the very end, self-defeating? One cannot help but wonder if a high state of awareness and bliss can be achieved at the cost of the rejection of the mother and child.

If the male and female are indeed complementary to each other and if a higher level of bliss can be achieved through sexual union, then the possible result of that bliss, the child, should also be accepted and revered. The West is a throw-away society—we do not mend things—and this is also reflected in the relationships between men and women. Without due consideration of the partner involved and without the acceptance of responsibility for the consequences of action, how could there be the achievement of a higher state of consciousness?

In the Kuṇḍalinī symbolism, the union of Śiva and Śakti is presented in one body, not as two bodies united. Lord Śiva ultimately becomes half-man and half-woman indicating that power and its manifestation are inseparable. The meaning of this symbolism is lost today. True oneness is only achieved in a particular state of mind for which the sex act is not essential. The pleasure from the sexual act, which is often misinterpreted as spiritual union, is in fact only the registration of stimulation in the pleasure center of the brain. The experience of union has many levels beginning with that of the male and female united in oneself. This has nothing to do with sex. The last union of the individual consciousness with Cosmic Consciousness is the final experience which is beyond the limitations of language to describe.

We can go a step farther and say that whatever is felt on the physical level is a stimulation and sensation that is interpreted by the mind. In the Second Cakra it is stated that the Yogi can destroy worlds. These are the worlds of the mind whose creative power has an awesome reach. While the intense practice of Kuṇḍalinī Yoga includes a recognition of one's needs, these needs are more often projected onto another person. By doing this, the projector does not realize it, but in reality he is seeing his needs through the other.

Sexual instinct has almost the power of gravitational pull. Emotional and sexual dependency are much more than just a hang-up created by social upbringing. As long as the emphasis is on the "I" and everything is related to this little word, we have to see that there is a whole chain of construction behind it, which has been created for the purpose of serving the "I." As the individual progresses in awareness, it becomes clear that the over-emphasis or priority given to sex has no place in the other Cakras. In the same way, the joy of self-gratification attained through acquiring a lot of material goods and comforts is short-lived, and the list of desires keeps increasing. But at some point in their development, aspirants experience joy for the happiness of another person which has nothing to do with themselves. This is pure joy that echoes back to the aspirant.

The other school of thought seeks to transcend the application of the Energy in a concrete way by realizing that for thousands of lifetimes human beings have applied and experienced sex. It recognizes that at some time it is necessary to loosen all attachments and especially the attachment to the sexual experience. The Dhyāna-Yogi (the meditative Yogi) wants to preserve energy to pursue the arduous Path towards Liberation. This is really very easy to understand when we consider that in everyday life certain demanding executive jobs are not open to the young person

who is still giving too much time and energy to physical interaction with the opposite sex. Only a beginner would assume that while focusing on the fulfillment of his desires he can at the same time pursue his development for Liberation. When there is attachment to sex, then Liberation cannot be achieved.

It must be understood that the Kuṇḍalinī system is for the man and woman who by their own choice have gratified sexual impulses in many lifetimes. Every human being goes through different stages of development. A child plays with colorful toys. A young person has different attractions, and the adult seeks again very different gratification, generally shifting into the pursuit of success and achievements of various kinds. On the spiritual Path, and particularly on the Path of Kuṇḍalinī, it needs to be understood that Kuṇḍalinī is not for the person for whom life is the continuous seeking of pleasures or the achievements of success in name and fame. All the Scriptures point out the same truth.

Each individual makes the decision how far he or she wants to go. The pursuit of Kuṇḍalinī is not necessarily only for the attainment of its highest goal. For most this is far in the distance and there is the need for intermediate goals—goals such as the development of the five senses, as well as bringing more quality into all aspects of life. Only when a certain development towards mankind's true potential has been achieved can we truly speak of entering upon the Path of Kuṇḍalinī.

*Excerpt from "Kuṇḍalinī: An Overview" by Swami Sivananda Radha. First printed during the summer of 1977 in "Ascent," the journal of the Yasodhara Ashram Society.*

## 9. Symptoms of Kuṇḍalinī

The effects of Kuṇḍalinī are negative if re-thinking has not been done and if the conscious mind (the interpreter) has not been sufficiently trained to accept changes, such as a wider acceptance of greater brain power, which had been previously rejected as impossible. Many experiences are claimed as Kuṇḍalinī when there has been only the removal of inhibitions, including inhibitions towards sex. All inhibitions are *learned* to a large degree and are not consciously controlled. Inhibitions as well as discrimination are necessary to balance instinctual desires and drives that could hurt others.

Manipulation of the mind through such means as hypnosis can produce startling or bizarre actions. The question arises of how many of the bodily experiences now described are a fabrication of the mind, the result of information fed into the mind through the publicity given to Kuṇḍalinī by lectures or publications.

Another significant question is why the Cosmic Intelligence allows a Kuṇḍalinī awakening to occur in an unprepared person. Before attempting to answer this, each person must first define what is meant by Cosmic Intelligence, by Kuṇḍalinī, and by "awakening." A comparison from nature may help to clarify this question. When branches from a fruit tree are placed in water in the spring after pruning, there is enough energy in the branch to produce flowers. However, these flowers

will not produce fruit. In the same way, manifestations of what is claimed to be Kuṇḍalinī Energy may be produced from the existing energy in the mind and body. The fruit of full enlightenment, though, is not produced by the creative ability of the mind.

Spontaneous Kuṇḍalinī may cause problems. Some of the symptoms are:

- lapsing easily into meditation (an indication is people who take a long time to awaken)
- dizziness (if there is poor blood circulation)
- sudden crying spells (this is just a release of pent-up emotions)
- pressure or pain along the spine
- pain along the right or left side of the chest
- pressure in the eyes—visual aberrations
- pressure in the forehead
- pressure in the top of the head
- spasmodic breathing
- a feeling of energy
- sounds inside the head
- respiration slowed dangerously low
- heat and cold in various parts of the body
- cold body, warm fontanella
- the feeling of a pulsating leaf around the pelvis area, the abdomen or head
- a sense of emptiness, of not being “here”
- irritability

Weakness in the back is present only when the karmic situation is bound up with emotions. If strong emotions have ruled in past lives, the problem may now recur in the physical for the purpose of eliminating the obstacle. Feelings of revenge and abuse arising from uncultivated imagination or very ordinary physical conditions can also be the reason.

Psychic energy is not something unusual, limited to gifted people. Small happenings, which are usually neglected, must be given continued observation in order to increase this faculty. Such things as the body-timer (being able to awake at a time decided upon), mother and child communication, hunches or uneasy feelings of warning should be observed.

Intense practice can create enormous pressure in the beginning, bringing to the surface weaknesses and causing mental-emotional pain when selfishness, false modesty, vanity, and all sorts of pride are encountered. Depressions are normally the result of not meeting one's abilities.

## 10. The Potential of Mind

Human beings live in the world of three dimensions. This includes the world of thought and all mental creativity and bringing this under control is the gateway to the fourth dimension.

Since the time of Aristotle, the West has subscribed to the linear method of thinking which allows only for logic and reasoning. However, we know by experience that life is not linear but a wave, and intuitive thinking is needed for balance.



It has been stated in the Mūlādhāra Cakra that the two nāḍīs cannot be properly defined to the satisfaction of linear thinking, but as a starting point they can be *temporarily* compared to the two vagus nerves. The two nāḍīs, joining in the Ājñā Cakra, are also symbolic for a practical as well as intuitive way of thinking. The practical includes, of course, logic and reason.

The Eastern mind does not make the clear distinction between intuition and intellect as the Western mind tends to do. The difficulty comes for the Westerner when there is an over-emphasis upon the intellect at the cost of the intuition. The simple person who is unencumbered by intellectual concepts is more receptive. What can be done to remain receptive and not to have the intellect continually interfering? Stop intellectualizing and just receive.

Intelligence is assumed to be related to the speed of energy transmission between thought connections. This rate of transmission is closer to the speed of sound than to that of light. If the brain could increase the number of connections and develop the speed of, let us say, a computer, then it should be possible for the brain at some time in its development to outperform the computer and maybe even perceive communications from unknown sources.

The old mammalian brain seems to be functioning in only a limited way in the human being. However, when brought back to its full power, it allows for much greater expression. In other words, while individuals have gained in one way they have lost in others. If we could recover the full potential of the mammalian brain, it would mean increased mind power. It is possible through yogic practices to regain control over areas of the brain that have been left behind for lack of use. However, there are no "gifts" available only to a privileged few. The Yogin has his attainment as a result of effort.

There are many provocative questions that can be asked concerning the usually untapped potential of mind over matter. For example, how is it possible to move objects by mental power alone? Is there such a phenomenon as virgin birth? The ancient Texts speak about the "four mind-born sons of Brahmā." What does this mean? Is it possible to ascend into more subtle ways of creation than those now open to us?

Another series of questions concerns the destiny of the mental-emotional thought patterns. What happens to them? Do they continue in existence? Is it possible that patterns created millions of years ago are still in existence? Are they travelling through space and is it possible that they can be retrieved? These are all thought-provoking possibilities.

## 11. The Gods on Earth

Excerpt from *Ekottara-Āgama XXXIV, Takakusu II, 737*

After the floods receded and the earth came back into being, there was upon the face of the earth a film more sweet-smelling than ambrosia. Do you want to know what was the taste of that film? It was like the taste of grape-wine in the mouth. And at this time the gods of the Central Heaven said to one another, "Let us go and see what it looks like . . . now that there is earth again." So the

young gods of that Heaven came down into the world and saw that over the earth was spread this film. They put their fingers into the earth and sucked them. Some put their fingers into the earth many times and ate a great deal of the film, and these at once lost all their majesty and brightness. Their bodies grew heavy and their substance became flesh and bone. They lost their magic and could no longer fly . . . and cried out to one another in dismay, "Now we are in sad case. We have lost our magic. There is nothing for it but to stay here on earth, for we cannot get back to Heaven." So they stayed and fed upon the film that covered the earth, and gazed at one another's beauty.

Then those among them that were most passionate became women, and these gods and goddesses fulfilled their desires and pleasure in one another. And this was how it was, Brethren, that when the world began, love-making first spread throughout the world; it is an old and constant thing . . .

And the gods who had returned to Heaven looked down and saw the young gods that had fallen, and they came down and reproached them saying, "Why are you behaving in this unclean way?" Then the gods on earth thought to themselves, "We must find some way to be together without being seen by others." So they made houses that would cover and hide them. Brethren, that was how houses first began.

Now the people . . . hated and despised such couples and . . . hit them or pelted them with sticks, clods of earth, tiles or stones . . . That is why today, when a girl is married, she is pelted with flowers or gold or silver . . . and the people, as they pelt her, say, "May peace and happiness, new bride, be yours!" Brethren, in former times ill was meant by these things that were done, but nowadays good is meant.

## 12. The Descent of the Soul

From a description of the Sabian doctrines by El-Khatibi, quoted by Jean Doresse in *The Secret Books of the Egyptian Gnostics*, reprinted with permission of the publisher: Viking Press, New York, © 1958, 1959 by Librairie Plon, Paris, p. 316.

"The Soul turned at one time towards matter. She fell in love with it and burned with desire to experience bodily pleasures, wished no more to be separated from it, thus the world was born. From that moment the Soul forgot Herself. She forgot Her original dwelling, Her true center, Her everlasting life. But God, unwilling to abandon the Soul to its degradation with Matter, endowed Her with understanding and the faculty of perception, precious gifts which would remind Her of Her high origin, the spiritual world which would restore Her consciousness of Herself, teach Her that She was a stranger here below . . . as soon as the Soul has just been taught by perception and understanding, as soon as She had regained self consciousness She longs for the spiritual world, as a man exiled in a strange land sighs for his distant homestead. She is convinced that to regain Her original state She must loose Herself from the ties of this world, from carnal concupiscences, from all material things." Thus El-Khatibi describes the descent of the Soul and then its return to the spiritual world.

## Recommended Books

---

AVALON, ARTHUR. (Sir John Woodroffe). *Shakti and Shakta*. Madras, India: Ganesh & Co. (Madras) Ltd., 1951.

———. *The Serpent Power*. Madras, India: Ganesh & Co. (Madras) Ltd., 1953.

AVALON, ARTHUR & ELLEN. *Hymns to the Goddess*. Madras, India: Ganesh & Co. (Madras) Ltd., 1952.

These three books by Sir John Woodroffe, and *Garland of Letters* published under the name of Arthur Avalon, have been the source of much of the theoretical material underlying the presentation in this book. They are recommended for study by the serious student. Other books by Arthur Avalon which are recommended are:

*Principles of Tantra*. Ganesh & Co., 1952.

*Kāma-Kalā-Vilāsa*. Ganesh & Co., 1953.

*The Greatness of Shiva*. Ganesh & Co., 1953.

*The Great Liberation*. Ganesh & Co., 1953.

*Hymn to Kali Karpūrādi-Stotra*. Ganesh & Co., 1953.

*Tantrarāja Tantra*. Ganesh & Co., 1954.

*Introduction to Tantra S'āstra*. Ganesh & Co., 1956.

*Kulacūdāmani Nigama*. Ganesh & Co., 1956.

BLAISE, CLARK & MUKHERJEE, BHARATI. *Days and Nights in Calcutta*. New York: Doubleday & Co., 1977. This book helps the reader to understand the workings of the Eastern mind and the underlying cultural differences between East and West. The impact that this has on the individual is clearly shown. The book also gives a realistic insight into Indian society today which is far removed from the life of the Yogis as presented by some Indians now living in the West.

BRACEWELL, RONALD N. *The Galactic Club: Intelligent Life in Outer Space*. San Francisco, CA: W. H. Freeman & Co., 1974. Professor Bracewell investigates communication (mind in whatever form) between terrestrial and extraterrestrial beings from a scientific level. An excellent steppingstone between contemporary scientific thought and the possibilities of mind as indicated by the ancient sages.

CAPRA, FRITJOF. *The Tao of Physics*. Berkeley, CA: Shambala Publications Inc., 1975. This is for the seeker who already has a broader vision and can see the Cosmic Dance of Śiva not only in all manifestations of life, but even in the sub-atomic world. It is not a book one can race through, but it is a wonderful platform for brainstorming the mind and escalating it to take off into spaces beyond the third dimension.

CERMINARA, GINA. *Many Mansions*. New York: New American Library Inc., 1967.

———. *Many Lives, Many Loves*. New York: William Sloane Associates, 1963. Both books by Gina Cerminara are very helpful in increasing the understanding of karma.



- CHINMAYANANDA, SWAMI. *Ashtavakra Geeta*. Madras, India: Chinmaya Publications Trust, 1972. The study of the *Ashtavakra Geeta* will lead to an understanding of the Self, the glory of realization and the methods of dissolution of the ego to the absolute state. Each verse must be meditated upon to achieve the desired results.
- CIRLOT, J. E. *A Dictionary of Symbols*. New York: Philosophical Library Inc., 1962. Symbolism is as essential a part of the ancient art of the Orient as it is in the West. The book contains word symbols which are helpful in the study of the unconscious, dreams, and visions, as well as in self-development.
- CLARK, ADRIAN V. *Psycho-Kinesis: Moving Matter with the Mind*. New York: Parker Publishing Co., Inc., 1973. The wide variety of experience given in this book may be overwhelming for the newcomer, but the hidden message to be pondered upon is—"What happens to my life if all these powers can be achieved?"
- DORESSE, JEAN. *The Secret Books of the Egyptian Gnostics*. New York: The Viking Press, 1960. An introduction to the Gnostic Coptic manuscripts discovered at Chenoboskion which contain many more examples than those cited in the book.
- DVIVEDI, M. N. *The Yoga Sutras of Patañjali*. Madras, India: The Theosophical Publishing House, 1947. This translation by Dvivedi, a Sanskrit scholar, as also that of Ernest Wood, are the pure text of the Sūtras unencumbered by scholarly notes. There are other translations of the Yoga Sūtras of Patañjali and those in the Harvard series of oriental books are particularly suitable material for the scholarly-minded person.
- FREUND, PHILLIP. *Myths of Creation*. Levittown, N.Y.: Transatlantic Arts, Inc., 1975. This book traces the idea of Divine authority from ancient man to the modern scientist.
- GARRISON, OMAR. *Tantra: The Yoga of Sex*. New York: The Julian Press Inc., 1964. The understanding of sex, its powers, and possible development to other levels is very well and clearly presented in this book.
- GASKELL, G. A. *Dictionary of All Scriptures and Myths*. New York: Julian Press, 1960. Like any dictionary, it is not complete, but it is full of useful information which is excellent for the ardent student.
- GOPI KRISHNA. *Kundalini, The Evolutionary Energy in Man*. Berkeley, CA: Shambala Publications Inc., 1970. A particularly valuable record of the symptoms of Kuṇḍalinī.
- GUENTHER, HERBERT V. *The Tantric View of Life*. Berkeley, CA: Shambala Publications Inc., 1972. A realistic view of living including human relationship on the physical level is clearly presented in this book.
- . *Kindly Bent to Ease Us*. Emeryville, CA: Dharma Publishing, 1975. The first part of the trilogy of *Finding Comfort and Ease* by Longchenpa will be helpful in understanding the working of the mind.
- GUENTHER, HERBERT V. & KAWAMURA, LESLIE S. *Mind in Buddhist Psychology*. Emeryville, CA: Dharma Publishing, 1975. Excellent material on the functioning of mind with many open questions for the student to work through.

- GUENTHER, HERBERT V. and ILSE & RADHA, SWAMI SIVANANDA. *Questions and Answers on Guru and Disciple*. Kootenay Bay, B.C., Canada: Yasodhara Ashram Society, 1977. A booklet compiled by Phyllis Dale, psychologist, from a conference on *Guru and Disciple* led by Dr. Guenther, Chairman of the Department of Far Eastern Studies, University of Saskatchewan, and Swami Sivananda Radha, president and founder of the Yasodhara Ashram.
- HOFFSTEIN, ROBERT M. *The English Alphabet*. New York: Kaedmon Publishing Co., 1975. This book is an interesting inquiry into the mystical aspects of English letters and words.
- HUXLEY, LAURA ARCHER. *This Timeless Moment*. New York: Farrar, Straus & Giroux, 1968. In moving words, Laura Huxley describes guiding her husband into Light at the time of his death.
- IYENGAR, B. K. S. *Light on Yoga*. revised edition, New York: Schocken Books, 1977. This is perhaps the best presentation in the area of Haṭha Yoga, containing a wealth of information but also spelling out to the student that only with intense practice over a long period of time are advanced results obtained. Mr. Iyengar speaks with the authority of personal experience.
- JACOBS, HANS. *Western Psychotherapy and Hindu Sadhana*. London: Allen & Unwin, 1961. Those who like to plough through case histories will enjoy this book!
- NIERENBERG, GERARD I. & CALERO, HENRY. *Meta-Talk*. New York: Trident Press, 1973. A guide to the hidden meanings in speech is well presented in this book.
- O'FLAHERTY, WENDY DONIGER. *Origins of Evil in Hindu Mythology*. Berkeley, CA: University of California Press, 1976. An excellent study covering sex symbols, the worship of the śivaliṅga, the meaning of the serpent or snake in its negative aspects, and the question of evil. This topic is in contrast to the Serpent Power or Kuṇḍalinī which is a Divine manifestation.
- OSBORNE, ARTHUR. *The Incredible Sai Baba*. London: Rider & Co., 1958. Psychic power and how to use it beneficially and inspirationally.
- PENFIELD, WILDER. *The Mystery of the Mind*. Princeton: Princeton University Press, 1975. Excellent information on the mind, the brain and its functioning.
- RADHA, SWAMI SIVANANDA. *Divine Light Invocation*. Kootenay Bay, B.C., Canada: Yasodhara Ashram Society—Shiva Press, 1966. A fifty-page booklet which contains the origin of the exercises as well as additional ideas and uses for the Invocation.
- RANK, OTTO. *Beyond Psychology*. New York: Dover Publications Inc., 1958. This book traces the relationship of the male-female through various ages and stages, explores the underlying feminine psychology and masculine ideology and reaches towards a psychology beyond the self.
- RELE, VASANT G. *The Mysterious Kundalini*. Bombay, India: D. B. Taraporevala Sons & Co., Ltd. Rele speaks about the traditional way of raising or awakening the Kuṇḍalinī and, as a medical doctor, gives some useful directions regarding the physiology of the body.
- SANNELLA, LEE. *Kundalini—Psychosis or Transcendence?* San Francisco, CA: Lee Sannella, 1976. Symptoms of Kuṇḍalinī are discussed.



- SHANKARANARAYANAN, S. *Glory of the Divine Mother*. Pondicherry, India, Dipti Publications, 1968. This book contains many inspiring verses.
- SHKLOVSKII, I. S. & SAGAN, CARL. *Intelligent Life in the Universe*. New York: Dell Publishing Co. Inc., (Delta Book), 1968. In part this book may be too technical for the average Yoga student, but it does make the apparently impossible powers of the mind seem possible. The authors do not specify what forms extraterrestrial life could take, but their ideas that it would not be a human form as on planet earth had been anticipated by the ancient sages who said that mind, as a vortex of energy, can reside under very different circumstances, independently of a physical body.
- SIVANANDA SARASVATI, SWAMI. *Guru and Disciple*. Rishikesh, India: Yoga Vedanta Forest Academy, 1955. This is a comprehensive book on the subject. The need for a Guru has been pointed out frequently, particularly in the second part of *Kuṇḍalinī: Yoga for the West*. The Yasodhara Ashram Society has prepared a booklet derived from a conference on the subject led by Drs. Herbert and Ilse Guenther and Swami Sivananda Radha. Other recommended books by Swami Sivananda Sarasvati are:
- *Kundalini Yoga*. Yoga Vedanta Forest Academy, 1950.
  - *Voice of the Himalayas*. Yoga Vedanta Forest Academy, 1953. This is written in short sentences or phrases from which key sentences can be chosen. It is a book to work with and be inspired by.
  - *Tantra Yoga, Nada Yoga, and Kriya Yoga*. Yoga Vedanta Forest Academy, 1955. This is perhaps the easiest for the Western mind to understand and, at the same time, provides a wealth of information.
  - *Sarvagita Sara*. Yoga Vedanta Forest Academy, 1959. This is a collection of minor Gītas which give additional information on various aspects such as Prāṇa and the Rāsa Līlā.
  - *The Science of Pranayama*. Yoga Vedanta Forest Academy, 1962.
- TYBERG, JUDITH. *Language of the Gods*. Los Angeles, CA: East-West Cultural Centre, 1970. Dr. Tyberg has put together an excellent book on the Sanskrit language for her own students, after spending three years at the Sanskrit University in Benares.
- VASU, S'RĪS' CHANDRA. *The Gheraṇḍa Saṁhitā*. Madras, India: Theosophical Publishing House, 1933. Essential reading for all who want to include the physical aspects such as Hatha Yoga.
- VENKATESANANDA, SWAMI. *Yoga*. Cape Province, South Africa: The Chiltern Yoga Trust, 1974. Short, concise information for the aspirant with special emphasis on the mudrās. It includes different aspects of Yoga such as Karma Yoga, Bhakti Yoga, Rāja Yoga, and Jñāna Yoga.
- *The Supreme Yoga*. Cape Province, South Africa: The Chiltern Yoga Trust, 1976. The Siddha Gīta, part of the Upashanti-Prakarana of the Yogavasiṣṭha, gives an explanation of the expansion of consciousness as it is effected through self-control and the negation of the subject-object relationship.
- VISHNUDEVANANDA, SWAMI. *Complete Illustrated Book of Yoga*. New York: Julian Press, 1960. Many years on the market and well-known.
- VON URBAN, RUDOLF. *Sex Perfection*. London: Arrow Books Ltd., 1969. This



book contains useful information on the nirvanic state, though in many other aspects it is out-dated.

- WARRIER, A. G. KRISHNA. *The S'ākta Upaniṣad-s*. Adyar, Madras, India: The Adyar Library and Research Centre, 1967. The S'ākta Upaniṣad-s have been composed with the definite purpose of linking the Advaitic view with the universe. The secret S'ākta Mantras are all dedicated to the Goddess, again with the aim of achieving unity with the Self.
- WATTS, ALAN W. *Nature, Man and Woman*. New York: The New American Library (Mentor Books), 1958. In the later portion of this book some Eastern aspects are given concerning the relationship between men and women.
- WHORF, BENJAMIN LEE. *Language, Thought & Reality*. Cambridge, Mass.: M.I.T. Press, 1966. In the section on "Language, Mind and Reality," the author speaks of Mantric power and the necessity to review language and thought in connection with the expansion of awareness. This book is recommended for study by the serious student.
- WOOD, ERNEST E. *Practical Yoga—Ancient and Modern*. New York: Wilshire Book Co., 1948. The practices and use of unusual powers can be found in this book which is based on the author's personal experience during forty years in India. The text is mainly based on the Yoga Sūtras of Patañjali which deal with instructions to obtain the powers. The book may, however, be too cryptic for the Western mind.
- WOODROFFE, SIR JOHN (Arthur Avalon, pseud.) *Garland of Letters*. Madras, India: Ganesh & Co., (Madras) Ltd., 1922. See notes on books by Arthur Avalon.
- YOGANANDA, PARAMAHANSA. *Autobiography of a Yogi*. Los Angeles, CA: Self-Realization Fellowship, 1972. This book is helpful reading to ease the mind into the Eastern way of thought and perception.



*Swami Sivananda Radha*

## About the Author

---

Swami Sivananda Radha is the spiritual leader of Yasodhara Ashram in Canada and of the Association for the Development of Human Potential in the United States. She has started various centers across Canada and in the United States where the study of Kundalini Yoga may be undertaken with others in small groups. Swami Radha received intensive training in Yoga, spiritual practices, and Eastern philosophy in India. She was initiated into Sannyasa by Swami Sivananda Saraswati of Rishikesh in 1956, and returned to the West at her Guru's request to bring yogic teachings to those who were seeking higher values in life.

### Other Books by Swami Sivananda Radha

*Radha: Diary of a Woman's Search*

*The Divine Light Invocation*

*Mantras: Words of Power*

*Gods Who Walk the Rainbow*

*Seeds of Light*

*Hatha Yoga: The Hidden Language*

For a list of centers where the study of Kundalini Yoga as outlined in this book may be practiced, or for additional information on publications, articles, tapes, and courses in Yoga, write to Yasodhara Ashram, P.O. Box 9, Kootenay Bay, B.C., Canada VOB IXO.





# Index

---

## A

Abhaya 281  
Abhayamudrā 40, 122, 123, 164,  
228, 248, 269  
Abode 271  
Abode of Mercy 167  
agni 121  
Agni Maṇḍala 121  
ahiṃsā 36  
airāvata 37, 227  
Ājñā-guru 273  
Ākāśamaṇḍala 227  
all-knowing 276  
all-seeing 276  
Ambhoja Maṇḍala 81  
amṛta 275, 279  
Anandakaṇḍa 165  
animal-man 124  
aṅkuśa 228, 229  
antelope 163  
Arjuna 85  
arrow 36, 229, 237  
art 77  
āsanās 17–21  
āśrama 61  
aspirant 9–13  
    the goal 9  
    married 12  
    pitfalls 10–11  
assumptions, making 10  
attachments 98–99  
autosuggestion 253  
awareness 86, 97, 297  
    of a sense 91

## B

balancing polarities 17  
battle-axe, symbol 85, 228  
    of discrimination 207, 238

beliefs, cherished 19, 138  
    investigation of 208  
bell 228  
bellows breath 216  
Bharata 76  
Bhastrikā-prāṇāyāma 216  
bīja 38, 81, 121, 164, 227, 268  
bi-location 49  
Bindu 268, 279, 282  
birth, death and sex  
    one unit 60–61  
bisexuality 54  
bliss 77, 303  
blue color, waves of 113  
body 82, 184  
    as spiritual tool 17, 18, 76,  
    237, 270  
    in Light 74, 104  
    Śakti 26  
body garden 157–158  
book, symbol 269  
bow, symbol 229  
    tension in 238  
Brahmā 35  
brahmacaryā 195–198  
brainstorming 321  
breathing, see prāṇāyāma  
    in speech 166  
bridge between two worlds 13  
Buddha, laughing 96

## C

Cakora bird 314  
cakra, see levels of consciousness  
    symbol 83  
candra-maṇḍala 277  
caṣaka, symbol 42  
cause and effect, see karma  
    chain of 61

celestial wishing tree 165, 167  
 celibacy 195–198  
 chanting as worship 150  
 Child Brahmā 39–40  
 children 54, 170  
 circle, symbol 36, 227, 267  
     of perfection 256, 273, 282  
 citkalā 37  
 citriṇī, symbol 39, 82, 122, 164,  
     227, 268  
 clairaudience 175  
 clairvoyance 175  
 clarification, of mind 260  
 Closing the House, exercise 284  
 CMC 268  
 cobra 248  
 coils, symbol 37  
 compassion 131  
     in healing 186, 317–318  
 competition 63, 65–66, 142  
     between senses 241  
 complete knowledge 312  
 concentration 130, 140, 144  
     on Mantra of Light 75  
     exercises 110–113, 272  
 concepts 19, 136  
 conch shell 82, 88  
 conditioning 293  
 consciousness 60, 152, 288, 297  
     brainstorming 321–326  
     levels of 5, 166  
     making a list 68–69  
 contemplation 130  
 corpse āsana 256  
 Cosmic AUM 233, 234, 246, 309  
 Cosmic Consciousness 289  
 Cosmic Dance 304  
 Cosmic Energy 103, 261  
     Śakti 25  
 Cosmic Fire 232–233  
 Cosmic Intelligence 150, 232  
 courage 154  
 creation by mind 291  
 crescent moon, symbol 37, 81, 97  
 crossroads, fourth cakṛa 203

## D

dahana, symbol 228  
 Ḍākinī, symbol 41  
 ḍamaru 84, 269, 281  
 dance 76–77  
     spiritual 107  
 daṇḍa, symbol 40  
 daydreaming 107  
 deadly games 61–65  
     with words 257  
 death  
     knowing time of 276  
     making a list 61–65  
     sex and birth, one unit 60–61  
 Death Pose 236  
 desires 97–99, 101–102, 207, 312  
 Deva, definition 182  
 Devī  
     definition 182  
     of Speech 43, 86, 166–167, 230–  
     232  
     Śakti 26  
 devotion 77, 167  
 dhyāna 267  
 diamond scepter 228  
 diary, daily spiritual 95, 98, 116, 140,  
     146, 203, 248  
     and dreams 148  
 disciple  
     and Guru 200–201  
 discrimination 112, 238, 297  
     and desires 207  
 disc, symbol 83  
 Divine Bliss 76  
 Divine Grace 77  
 Divine Law 54  
 Divine Light Invocation 103, 155, 193,  
     272, 310  
     at death 60  
     changing self-image 106, 108, 110,  
     206  
     exercise 70–74  
     healing 186, 189–190  
     psychic experiences 173–174



Divine Mother 167, 278  
     and women 30–31  
     Śakti 25–30, 182–186  
 Divine Union 195, 315  
 divorce 54  
 doubt 13, 177–178  
 dreams 92, 137, 148–149  
 drinking cup, symbol 42  
 drum, symbol 84, 269, 281

## E

ego 167, 177, 237, 239, 257, 297  
     greed 185  
     maintain dignity 250  
     pride 105, 150  
 elephant 37, 227, 247  
 emotions 142–144  
     coloring sight 129  
     hardening concepts 136  
     in healing 188  
     kiln of 97  
     making a list 144–147  
     refined feelings 207  
     spiritual energy 149  
 energy 25, 98, 103, 109, 124  
     brainstorming 321–326  
     field 179  
     in healing 189  
     manifest—Śakti 152, 182–183  
     neutral 52, 75, 136  
     prāṇic 21, 322  
 eternal knowledge 302, 312  
 ethereal 234  
 evolution 60–61, 326  
     of movement 76  
 expectations 68  
 experience 69, 257

## F

faith 154, 178  
 family 12, 55  
 fasting 92  
 fear 99–100, 154

feelings  
     and touch 168–169  
     refined 169, 207  
 fire, symbol 228, 246  
 fire-weapon, symbol 122  
 foundation 9, 52, 139  
 friend 203–204, 206

## G

gaḍā, symbol 83  
 gandha, symbol 35  
 Gandhi, Mahatma 48  
 garden mind 64  
 Garuḍa Bird 106  
 Gateway of Liberation 312  
 Gaurī (Eternal), symbol 228–229  
 Gāyatrī 25  
 genius 249–250  
 gesture, symbol 40, 122, 164, 165,  
     228, 269  
 ghaṇṭā, symbol 228  
 goad 237, 246  
     symbol 228, 229  
 God  
     as Divine Mother 25  
     as Energy 183, 325  
     image of 144  
     names of 88  
     symbol 39, 82, 122, 164, 228  
 God/Goddess, symbol 268  
 god-man 124  
 Goddess, see Śakti  
     of speech 43–46, 86–88, 124–128,  
     166–168, 230–233  
     of The Spoken Word 182  
     symbol 41, 83, 122, 164, 228  
 Gopīs 76  
 gourd, symbol 40  
 gratitude 103, 146–147, 191, 318  
 Great Void 271, 277  
 greed 185  
 Guṇas 25  
 Guru 11, 18, 61, 87, 197, 255  
     Ājñā 273  
     and disciple 200–201, 275, 277

criticizing the 278, 318  
in Light 179  
parent as 54  
within 148, 201, 277  
worship of 191

## H

Ha 17, 39  
habits 136, 138  
habitual thinking patterns 257  
Hara 308  
headstand 19–21  
healing 186–190, 317  
hearing 234–238  
    exercises 238–245  
    symbol 227  
Heart 167  
Higher Self, see *Self*  
higher states of consciousness 322–323  
homosexuality 54  
householder 194  
    and celibacy 196  
Human Tree, see *headstand*  
humility 105, 167, 191–192  
hypnosis 293–294

## I

Īdā 39, 82, 121, 164, 227, 268  
identification 253–254  
ignorance 305  
image 102, 106–108, 110–111, 144  
    abstract or concrete 140  
    exercise 112  
    in worship 103, 150  
    making a list 108–109  
illusion, see *māyā*  
imagination 75, 90, 92, 111  
    and desires 97–99  
    and emotions 136, 139  
    making a list 99–101  
    poor self-image 106  
    uncultivated 88, 305  
Indra's bow 308  
insights 113

intelligence 291  
interpretation 137  
intuition 45, 113, 131  
intuitive perception 86–87  
invisibility 179, 310  
Īśa, symbol 164  
Iṣṭadevatā, symbol 122, 164  
    worship of 206  
Itara 267

## J

Jīvas 76  
Jñānamudrā 216  
Jyotir 277

## K

Kākinī, symbol 164  
kalpataru, 165, 167  
kamaṇḍalu 115  
    symbol 40  
karma 54, 64, 66, 82, 167, 231  
Kāmasūtra 260  
key sentences 141, 239  
khaḍga, symbol 41  
Khaṭvāṅga 41, 269  
killing 63  
knowing of the heart 230  
kṛpāna, symbol 228  
Kṛṣṇa 76, 85, 113  
kumbhaka 211  
Kunda flower 81, 83  
Kuṇḍalinī Fire 258

## L

Lākinī, symbol 122  
language 124–125  
Language of the Gods 86  
Language of the Heart 43  
learning 302  
Liberation 185, 293  
Light 173, 179, 186–187, 193  
    in pranic healing 218  
    meditation on 263

- passing into 60
- visualization 72-74, 103-104, 140
- lights, seeing 232
- Līlā of the Lord 25
- liṅga, symbol 37
- listening 88, 235, 252
  - intuitive perception 86
- lotus, symbol 35, 81, 83, 84, 121, 163, 227, 267
  - meditation on Light 263
- love 54, 77
  - making a list 67-68
  - pure 275

## M

- mace, symbol 83
- Mahākālī 184
- Mahālakṣmī 184
- Mahāmudrā 285
- Mahānāda, symbol 268
- Mahāsarasvatī 184
- Maheśvarī 184
- Makara 81
- mālā 40, 82, 111,
  - symbol 269
- man-man 124
- Mantra 66, 86, 87, 89, 111, 249
  - Divine Light Invocation 74, 75
  - self-generating 167, 252, 269, 281
  - to change self-image 206
  - vibrations 125, 126
  - words of power 45-46, 277
- marriage 53-55
  - spiritual 54
- mauna 48
- māyā 182, 185
- mechanicalness 66-67, 138
- meditation 86, 113, 130
  - on the Light 263
- Meditation on the Rainbow 286
- mediums 298
- memory, see recall
- mental aspects 290
- mental background noises 292
- mercy 167

- merry-go-round, of mind 175
- mind 179, 183, 287-293
  - brainstorming 321-326
  - making a list 68-69
  - powers of 173-177
  - subjective and objective 282-284
  - watching the 110-113, 115
- mineral-man 124
- moon, symbol
  - crescent 81
  - quarter 268
- Most High 76, 295
- mudrā 295

## N

- nāḍī, symbol 39
- nāgendra, symbol 228
- naming 43, 88
- narcissism 106
- nectar and ambrosia 20-21, 41, 275, 279-281
- needs 124, 147
- noose 237, 246
  - symbol 228, 229

## O

- OM 39, 88, 268, 277
- omniscience, omnipotence and omnipresence 247

## P

- padma 83
- padmāsana 84
- Padre Pio 49
- pain 68, 99
  - making a list 56
  - self-created 130-131, 139, 142
- Paramaśiva, symbol 268
- Paramātman, see Kṛṣṇa
- pāśa 228, 229
- Path of Kuṇḍalinī 153
- peace 113
- peace of mind 312



Pearl of Great Price 13  
 personality aspects 99, 106–108, 237  
   making a list 109–110  
 pineal 281–282  
   symbol 267  
 Piṅgalā, symbol 39, 81, 121, 164, 227, 268  
 pituitary 267, 281–282  
 poetry 166, 305  
 point of no return 270  
 polarities, balancing 17  
 polarity of mind 304  
 power 43, 75, 182  
   abuse of 153–154  
   of mind 45  
   of speech 302  
 powers of the cakras 301  
 powers of the mind 293–298  
 prāṇa 39, 211, 218, 271  
   in food 92  
 Prāṇava 88, 268  
 prāṇāyāma 211–218  
 Prāṇic Energy 21  
 prāṇic healing 218  
 prayers 192  
 precious ear 236  
 preconceived ideas 321  
 pride 105, 150  
 psychic manifestations 173–174, 298  
 psychic powers 10–11  
 pure intellect 315  
 pure mind 113  
 puruṣa and prakṛti 76

## Q

Quarter Moon, symbol 268

## R

rainbow 25, 286, 308  
 rajas 25, 49, 90, 91  
   in sight 129  
   in speech 166  
   in taste 92  
   in touch 168–169

rajasic mind 290  
 Rākinī 94, 107  
   symbol 83  
 ram, symbol 121  
 rasa, symbol 81  
 reasoning 257  
 recall 112, 174  
 red, symbol 35  
 reflection 98, 142, 146  
 reincarnation 249, 276  
 renunciation 98, 147, 207  
 resonance 87–88, 231  
 revenge 169  
 reverence for life 220  
 role-playing 107  
 rosary, symbol 40, 122, 269  
 ṛṣis 43–46  
 rudrākṣamālā 40, 122

## S

śabda, symbol 38  
 Sadāśiva 247  
   symbol 228  
 saints 325  
 Śākta 25, 28  
 Śākta/Śakti 279  
 Śakti  
   and women 31  
   energy manifest 152, 182–186  
   Goddess of Speech 43, 86, 124–125  
   166–167, 230  
   symbol 122  
   -yoga philosophy 25–30  
 Śakti Hākinī 278, 281  
   symbol 268  
 Śakti Rākinī 107  
   symbol 83  
 Sāmbaśirsāsana, see headstand  
 Samādhī 322–323  
 Samaya 304, 306  
 Śambhu 316  
 Saṃvarta 306  
 Śankha, symbol 82  
 Sanskrit 43  
 Sarasvatī 307

- Sat-cit-ānanda 316
- ṣaṅkoṇa, symbol 163
- sattva 25, 49, 90, 91
  - in sight 129
  - in smell 51
  - in speech 166
  - in taste 92
  - in touch 168–169
- sattvic mind 290
- security 181
- seed sound 38, 81, 121, 164, 227, 268
- Self (Higher) 74, 84, 146
  - hearing the 248–249, 275
  - realizing the 153, 200
  - through dreams 148
- self-development 9
- self-hypnosis 108, 294
- self-image 106–108, 204–206
  - making a list 108–109
- self-inquiry 9
- self-mastery 143
- self pity 106
- selfless service 314
- Selves, communication of 166–167
- senses, refinement of 91
- serpent 273
- sex 52–55, 151
  - and smell 49
  - birth and death, one unit 60–61
  - making a list 58–59
  - quality in 193
  - symbols 37
- siddha 268
- siddhis 130
- signposts 232
- sight 129–131
  - exercises 132–135
  - symbol 121
- silence 48
- sin 303
- Śiva 28
  - and Śakti 26–30
  - dance of 76
  - fragrance of 49–50
- Śiva/Śakti 304, 306, 311
- śivaliṅga 267
- Sivananda, Swami 12, 200
  - quoted 25–30
- sixth sense 288
- skull, empty 46, 281
  - symbol 41, 269
- smell 49–51
  - exercises 50–51
  - symbol 35
- snake 248
- snake king, symbol 228
- So'ham Hamsa 219
- soul, see Self
- soul mates 55
- sound
  - and resonance 231
  - power of 43–45, 88
  - seed sound 38, 81, 121, 164, 227, 268
  - symbol 38
- sparsā, symbol 163
- spear, symbol 41
- speech
  - beyond words 230
  - exercises 47–48, 88–90, 125–128
  - Goddess of 43–46, 86–88, 166–168 230–233
  - to cultivate 90
- spine
  - symbol 40
  - tree 20
- spiritual companions 238
- spiritual experience 163, 174, 232, 298
- spiritual practice 66, 177, 178
  - at death 60
  - preciousness of 307
  - time of life 194–195
- spontaneity 151
- square, symbol 36
- staff
  - symbol 40
  - with skull, symbol 41, 269
- stages of development 124
- standards 52–53
- stigmata 49

straight-walk thinking 139, 178, 184,  
237

suggestion 294-295

power of 295

śūla, symbol 41, 84, 228

surrender 105, 255

and listening 239, 240

in Divine Light Invocation 72

Suṣumnā

path of Energy 271

symbol 39, 82, 121, 164, 268

svayaṃbhū 37

sword, symbol 41, 228

of discrimination 238

symbols

for abstract ideas 184

of cakras 35-42, 81-85, 121-123,

163-165, 227-229, 267-269

## T

tamas 25, 49, 90, 91

in sight 129

in speech 166

in taste 92

in touch 168-169

tamasic mind 290

ṭaṅka 85, 228

taste 91-92

exercises 93-96

symbol 81

tattva, symbol 35, 81, 121, 163, 227,  
267

telepathic communication 175

temptations 318

ṭha 17, 39

Third Ear 241

Third Eye 122, 131

thought 64, 89

three worlds 309, 312

thunderbolt, symbol 123

touch 168-169

exercises 169-172

symbol 163

trance 86-87, 296

transmission of knowledge 326

traps 97, 108, 237

travel companion 166

triangle, symbol 37, 121, 163, 267

trident, symbol 84, 228

## U

upside-down tree, see headstand

## V

vajra, symbol 123, 228

Vanamālā 82

vara(da)

symbol 122, 123, 164, 269

Veda 28

vegetable-man 124

vermilion, symbol 81

vibration 125, 126

vidyā, symbol 269

Viṣṇu 106

symbol 82, 122

visualization 101

exercises 102-105

Void 46, 271, 277

vortex of energy 275, 324

## W

war club, symbol 83

watching the mind

exercises 111-112

water 90, 115-116

wealth of knowledge 307, 312

Wealth of Yoga 312

white, symbol 267

White Light 271

will 185

in Divine Light Invocation

72

and self will 240

wisdom, inner 178

Wishing Tree 165, 167

woman 30-31, 194-195



word 56, 89, 124  
  power 43, 62  
worship 13, 149–150, 199–202  
  choosing an image of 102  
  of Divine Mother 25, 30  
  of Guru 191

XYZ

yantra, symbol 36  
Yati 277  
yoni, symbol 37, 267  
Yonimudrā 284



